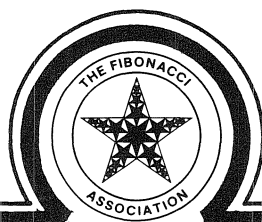


# The Fibonacci Quarterly

THE OFFICIAL JOURNAL OF THE FIBONACCI ASSOCIATION

VOLUME 24  
NUMBER 3



AUGUST  
1986

## CONTENTS

Expansion of the Fibonacci Numbers $F_{mn+r}$ in the $m$ Powers of Fibonacci or Lucas Numbers .....	James E. Desmond	194
Some Combinational Sequences .....	Joseph W. Creely	209
Hypersurfaces Associated with Simson Formula Analogues .....	A. F. Horadam	221
Determinantal Hypersurfaces for Lucas Sequences of Order $r$ , and a Generalization .....	A. F. Horadam	227
On the Occurrences of Fibonacci Sequences in the Counting of Matchings in Linear Polygonal Chains .....	E. J. Farrell	238
The Fibonacci Ratio in a Thermodynamical Problem: A Combinatorial Approach .....	J.-P. Gallinar	247
A Further Note on Pascal Graphs ..... B. P. Sinha, S. Ghose, B. B. Bhattacharya, & P. K. Srimani		251
On Fibonacci $k$ -ary Trees .....	Derek K. Chang	258
Fibonacci Numbers as Expected Values in a Game of Chance .....	Dean S. Clark	263
Sequences Generated by Multiple Reflections .....	Ian Bruce	268
A Relation for the Prime Distribution Function ..	Paul S. Bruckman	273
Elementary Problems and Solutions .....	Edited by A. P. Hillman, Gloria C. Padilla, & Charles R. Wall	277
Advanced Problems and Solutions .....	Edited by Raymond E. Whitney	283

## PURPOSE

The primary function of **THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY** is to serve as a focal point for widespread interest in the Fibonacci and related numbers, especially with respect to new results, research proposals, challenging problems, and innovative proofs of old ideas.

## EDITORIAL POLICY

**THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY** seeks articles that are intelligible yet stimulating to its readers, most of whom are university teachers and students. These articles should be lively and well motivated, with new ideas that develop enthusiasm for number sequences or the exploration of number facts. Illustrations and tables should be wisely used to clarify the ideas of the manuscript. Unanswered questions are encouraged, and a complete list of references is absolutely necessary.

## SUBMITTING AN ARTICLE

Articles should be submitted in the format of the current issues of the **THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY**. They should be typewritten or reproduced typewritten copies, that are clearly readable, double spaced with wide margins and on only one side of the paper. The full name and address of the author must appear at the beginning of the paper directly under the title. Illustrations should be carefully drawn in India ink on separate sheets of bond paper or vellum, approximately twice the size they are to appear in print.

Two copies of the manuscript should be submitted to: **GERALD E. BERGUM, EDITOR, THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY, DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS, SOUTH DAKOTA STATE UNIVERSITY, BOX 2220, BROOKINGS, SD 57007-1297.**

Authors are encouraged to keep a copy of their manuscripts for their own files as protection against loss. The editor will give immediate acknowledgment of all manuscripts received.

## SUBSCRIPTIONS, ADDRESS CHANGE, AND REPRINT INFORMATION

Address all subscription correspondence, including notification of address change, to: **RICHARD VINE, SUBSCRIPTION MANAGER, THE FIBONACCI ASSOCIATION, SANTA CLARA UNIVERSITY, SANTA CLARA, CA 95053.**

Requests for reprint permission should be directed to the editor. However, general permission is granted to members of The Fibonacci Association for noncommercial reproduction of a limited quantity of individual articles (in whole or in part) provided complete reference is made to the source.

Annual domestic Fibonacci Association membership dues, which include a subscription to **THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY**, are \$25 for Regular Membership, \$35 for Sustain Membership, and \$65 for Institutional Membership; foreign rates, which are based on international mailing rates, are somewhat higher than domestic rates; please write for details. **THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY** is published each February, May, August and November.

All back issues of **THE FIBONACCI QUARTERLY** are available in microfilm or hard copy format from **UNIVERSITY MICROFILMS INTERNATIONAL, 300 NORTH ZEEB ROAD, DEPT. P.R., ANN ARBOR, MI 48106.** Reprints can also be purchased from **UMI CLEARING HOUSE** at the same address.

1986 by

© The Fibonacci Association

All rights reserved, including rights to this journal issue as a whole and, except where otherwise noted, rights to each individual contribution.

# *The Fibonacci Quarterly*

Founded in 1963 by Verner E. Hoggatt, Jr. (1921-1980)  
Br. Alfred Brousseau, and I.D. Ruggles

*THE OFFICIAL JOURNAL OF THE FIBONACCI ASSOCIATION  
DEVOTED TO THE STUDY  
OF INTEGERS WITH SPECIAL PROPERTIES*

## **EDITOR**

GERALD E. BERGUM, South Dakota State University, Brookings, SD 57007

## **ASSISTANT EDITORS**

MAXEY BROOKE, Sweeny, TX 77480  
JOHN BURKE, Gonzaga University, Spokane, WA 99258  
PAUL F. BYRD, San Jose State University, San Jose, CA 95192  
LEONARD CARLITZ, Duke University, Durham, NC 27706  
HENRY W. GOULD, West Virginia University, Morgantown, WV 26506  
A.P. HILLMAN, University of New Mexico, Albuquerque, NM 87131  
A.F. HORADAM, University of New England, Armidale, N.S.W. 2351, Australia  
FRED T. HOWARD, Wake Forest University, Winston-Salem, NC 27109  
DAVID A. KLARNER, University of Nebraska, Lincoln, NE 68588  
RICHARD MOLLIN, University of Calgary, Calgary T2N 1N4, Alberta, Canada  
JOHN RABUNG, Randolph-Macon College, Ashland, VA 23005  
DONALD W. ROBINSON, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT 84602  
LAWRENCE SOMER, George Washington University, Washington, DC 20052  
M.N.S. SWAMY, Concordia University, Montreal H3C 1M8, Quebec, Canada  
D.E. THORO, San Jose State University, San Jose, CA 95192  
CHARLES R. WALL, Trident Technical College, Charleston, SC 29411  
WILLIAM WEBB, Washington State University, Pullman, WA 99163

## **BOARD OF DIRECTORS OF THE FIBONACCI ASSOCIATION**

CALVIN LONG (President)  
Washington State University, Pullman, WA 99163  
G.L. ALEXANDERSON  
Santa Clara University, Santa Clara, CA 95053  
HUGH EDGAR (Vice-President)  
San Jose State University, San Jose, CA 95192  
RODNEY HANSEN  
Whitworth College, Spokane, WA 99251  
MARJORIE JOHNSON (Secretary-Treasurer)  
Santa Clara Unified School District, Santa Clara, CA 95051  
JEFF LAGARIAS  
Bell Laboratories, Murray Hill, NJ 07974  
THERESA VAUGHAN  
University of North Carolina, Greensboro, NC 27412

# EXPANSION OF THE FIBONACCI NUMBERS $F_{mn+r}$ IN THE $m^{\text{th}}$ POWERS OF FIBONACCI OR LUCAS NUMBERS

JAMES E. DESMOND

Pensacola Junior College, Pensacola, FL 32504

(Submitted November 1982)

## 1. INTRODUCTION

It is known, see [1, p. 77], that

$$F_{2a}F_{2n} = F_{a+n}^2 - F_{a-n}^2$$

and, see [2, p. 43], that

$$F_a F_{2a} F_{3n} = F_{a+n}^3 + (-1)^{a+1} L_a F_n^3 + (-1)^{n+1} F_{a-n}^3$$

for arbitrary integers  $a$  and  $n$ . These identities suggest the possible existence of a general identity of the form

$$wF_{mn} = \sum_{t=1}^k b_t [F_{ta+n}^m + (-1)^{nm+1} F_{ta-n}^m] + b, \quad (1)$$

where  $m$ ,  $n$ , and  $a$  are integers with  $m > 0$ , and where  $w$  and  $b_t$ ,  $1 \leq t \leq k$ , are integral expressions free of the variable  $n$ , and  $b$  is an integral expression. Gladwin [3] has given existence proofs for some general identities of a similar type. An example of the kind of identity that we shall obtain is

$$\begin{aligned} F_a^2 F_{2a}^2 F_{3a} F_{4a} F_{5a} F_{6a} F_{6n} &= F_a F_{2a} F_{3a} F_{n+3a}^6 + (-1)^{a+1} F_{2a}^2 F_{6a} F_{n+2a}^6 \\ &+ (-1)^a F_a F_{5a} F_{6a} F_{n+a}^6 + (-1)^{a+1} F_a F_{5a} F_{6a} F_{n-a}^6 \\ &+ (-1)^a F_{2a}^2 F_{6a} F_{n-2a}^6 - F_a F_{2a} F_{3a} F_{n-3a}^6 \end{aligned}$$

for arbitrary integers  $a$  and  $n$ . In the sequel we shall use the following well-known results: for all integers  $a$  and  $n$ ,

$$(L_n \pm \sqrt{5}F_n)^m = 2^{m-1}(L_{mn} \pm \sqrt{5}F_{mn}) \quad (2)$$

where  $m$  is a positive integer,

$$F_{-n} = (-1)^{n+1}F_n \quad \text{and} \quad L_{-n} = (-1)^n L_n, \quad (3)$$

$$L_n^2 = 5F_n^2 + (-1)^n 4, \quad (4)$$

$$2F_{a+n} = F_a L_n + L_a F_n, \quad (5)$$

$$2L_{a+n} = 5F_a F_n + L_a L_n. \quad (6)$$



# EXPANSION OF THE FIBONACCI NUMBERS

## 2. PRELIMINARY LEMMAS

Lemma 1:  $L_m^2/F_m^2 - L_n^2/F_n^2 = (-1)^{n+1} 4F_{m+n}F_{m-n}/F_m^2F_n^2$  for  $m \neq 0$  and  $n \neq 0$ .

The proof of Lemma 1 follows from equations (3) and (5).

In the sequel, let  $\alpha$  be a nonzero integer.

Lemma 2: For  $m > 0$ ,

$$(i) \quad 2^{m-1}F_{mm} = \sum_{i=1}^{\left[\frac{m+1}{2}\right]} \binom{m}{2i-1} 5^{i-1} F_n^{2i-1} L_n^{m+1-2i},$$

$$(ii) \quad 2^{m-1}L_{mm} = \sum_{i=1}^{\left[\frac{m+2}{2}\right]} \binom{m}{2i-2} 5^{i-1} F_n^{2i-2} L_n^{m+2-2i},$$

$$(iii) \quad 2^{m-1}[F_{\alpha+n}^m + (-1)^{m+1}F_{\alpha-n}^m] = \sum_{i=1}^{\left[\frac{m+1}{2}\right]} \binom{m}{2i-1} F_n^{2i-1} L_n^{m+1-2i} F_{\alpha}^{m+1-2i} L_{\alpha}^{2i-1},$$

$$(iv) \quad 2^{m-1}[F_{\alpha+n}^m + (-1)^m F_{\alpha-n}^m] = \sum_{i=1}^{\left[\frac{m+2}{2}\right]} \binom{m}{2i-2} F_n^{2i-2} L_n^{m+2-2i} F_{\alpha}^{m+2-2i} L_{\alpha}^{2i-2},$$

$$(v) \quad 2^{m-1}[L_{\alpha+n}^m + (-1)^m L_{\alpha-n}^m] = \sum_{i=1}^{\left[\frac{m+2}{2}\right]} \binom{m}{2i-2} 5^{2i-2} F_n^{2i-2} L_n^{m+2-2i} F_{\alpha}^{2i-2} L_{\alpha}^{m+2-2i},$$

$$(vi) \quad 2^{m-1}[L_{\alpha+n}^m + (-1)^{m+1}L_{\alpha-n}^m] = \sum_{i=1}^{\left[\frac{m+1}{2}\right]} \binom{m}{2i-1} 5^{2i-1} F_n^{2i-1} L_n^{m+1-2i} F_{\alpha}^{2i-1} L_{\alpha}^{m+1-2i}.$$

Proof: We shall prove formulas (i) and (iii). The remaining formulas have similar proofs. By equation (2),

$$2^{m-1}(L_{mm} + \sqrt{5}F_{mm}) - 2^{m-1}(L_{mm} - \sqrt{5}F_{mm}) = (L_n + \sqrt{5}F_n)^m - (L_n - \sqrt{5}F_n)^m.$$

That is,

$$\begin{aligned} 2^m \sqrt{5}F_{mm} &= \sum_{i=1}^m \binom{m}{i} L_n^{m-i} (\sqrt{5}F_n)^i [1 + (-1)^{i+1}] \\ &= 2 \sum_{i=1, i \text{ odd}}^{\left[\frac{m+1}{2}\right]-1} \binom{m}{i} L_n^{m-i} (\sqrt{5}F_n)^i \\ &= 2 \sum_{i=1}^{\left[\frac{m+1}{2}\right]} \binom{m}{2i-1} L_n^{m-2i+1} (\sqrt{5}F_n)^{2i-1}. \end{aligned}$$

Formula (i) can now be obtained by dividing through by  $2\sqrt{5}$ .

# EXPANSION OF THE FIBONACCI NUMBERS

Now, by equations (5) and (3),

$$\begin{aligned}
 2^m [F_{a+n}^m + (-1)^{m+1} F_{a-n}^m] &= (F_a L_n + L_a F_n)^m + (-1)^{m+1} (F_a L_{-n} + L_a F_{-n})^m \\
 &= (F_a L_n + L_a F_n)^m - (F_a L_n - L_a F_n)^m \\
 &= \sum_{i=1}^m \binom{m}{i} F_a^{m-i} L_n^{m-i} L_a^i F_n^i [1 + (-1)^{i+1}] \\
 &= 2 \sum_{i=1, i \text{ odd}}^{\left\lfloor \frac{m+1}{2} \right\rfloor} \binom{m}{i} F_n^i L_n^{m-i} F_a^{m-i} L_a^i \\
 &= 2 \sum_{i=1}^{\left\lfloor \frac{m+1}{2} \right\rfloor} \binom{m}{2i-1} F_n^{2i-1} L_n^{m-2i+1} F_a^{m-2i+1} L_a^{2i-1}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Formula (iii) is obtained by dividing through by 2.

Let  $V_k = (x_t^{i-1})$  for  $1 \leq i, t \leq k$ , denote the Vandermonde matrix. From [4, pp. 15, 16] it follows that for  $k > 1$  and  $t = 1, 2, \dots, k$ ,

$$|V_k| = (V_k)_{kt} \prod_{\substack{i=1 \\ i \neq t}}^k (x_t - x_i), \quad (7)$$

where  $(V_k)_{kt}$  is the cofactor of  $x_t^{k-1}$  in  $|V_k|$ .

**Lemma 3:** For  $k > 1$  and any constant  $c \neq x_t$ ,  $t = 1, 2, \dots, k$ ,

$$\sum_{t=1}^k (V_k)_{kt} / (c - x_t) = |V_k| / \prod_{i=1}^k (c - x_i).$$

**Proof:** Let  $C_k = [c_{it}]$ , where  $c_{it} = 1$  if  $i = t$ ,  $c_{it} = -c$  if  $i = t + 1$ , and  $c_{it} = 0$  otherwise. Then,

$$\begin{aligned}
 |V_k| &= |C_k| \cdot |V_k| = |C_k V_k| = \sum_{t=1}^k (C_k V_k)_{1t} = \sum_{t=1}^k \left[ \prod_{\substack{i=1 \\ i \neq t}}^k (c - x_i) \right] (V_k)_{kt} \\
 &= \prod_{i=1}^k (c - x_i) \sum_{t=1}^k (V_k)_{kt} / (c - x_t).
 \end{aligned}$$

In the sequel, let  $x_t \equiv L_{ta}^2 / F_{ta}^2$  for  $t = 1, 2, \dots, k$ .

**Lemma 4:** For  $k > 1$  and  $t = 1, 2, \dots, k$ ,

$$(-1)^{ta+1} 2^{2k-2} (V_k)_{kt} \prod_{i=k+1}^{k+t} F_{ia} = L_{ta} F_{ta}^{2k-2} |V_k| \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia}.$$

**Proof:** By equation (7) and Lemma 1, for  $k > 1$  and  $t = 1, 2, \dots, k$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
 |V_k| / (V_k)_{kt} &= \prod_{\substack{i=1 \\ i \neq t}}^k (x_t - x_i) = \prod_{\substack{i=1 \\ i \neq t}}^k [(-1)^{ia+1} 4 F_{ta+ia} F_{ta-ia} / F_{ta}^2 F_{ia}^2] \\
 &= (-1)^{ta+1} (F_{ta}^4 / 4 F_{2ta}^2) \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k [(-1)^{ia+1} 4 F_{ta+ia} / F_{ta}^2 F_{ia}^2] \right] \prod_{\substack{i=1 \\ i \neq t}}^k F_{ta-ia}
 \end{aligned}$$

# EXPANSION OF THE FIBONACCI NUMBERS

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= (-1)^{ta+1} (4^{k-1} F_{ta}^3 / L_{ta}) \left[ \prod_{i=t+1}^{t+k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{t-1} F_{ta-ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=t+1}^k F_{ta-ia} \right] \\
 &\quad \div F_{ta}^{2k} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \\
 &= (-1)^{ta+1} (4^{k-1} / L_{ta}) \left[ \prod_{i=t}^{t+k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{t-1} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{k-t} F_{-ia} \right] \\
 &\quad \div F_{ta}^{2k-2} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \\
 &= (-1)^{ta+1} 2^{2k-2} \left[ \prod_{i=k+1}^{k+t} F_{ia} \right] / L_{ta} F_{ta}^{2k-2} \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia}
 \end{aligned}$$

since, by equation (5),  $F_{2ta} = F_{ta} L_{ta}$ .

**Lemma 5:** For  $k > 1$ ,

$$\sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^{ta+1} F_{ta}^2 (V_k)_{kt} = (1/2^{2k-2}) |V_k| \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia}.$$

**Proof:** For  $t = 1, 2, \dots, k$ ,

$$x_t \equiv L_{ta}^2 / F_{ta}^2 = (5F_{ta}^2 + (-1)^{ta} 4) / F_{ta}^2 = 5 + (-1)^{ta} 4 / F_{ta}^2.$$

It follows that  $(-1)^{ta+1} F_{ta}^2 = 4 / (5 - x_t)$ . Therefore, by Lemma 3,

$$\begin{aligned}
 \sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^{ta+1} F_{ta}^2 (V_k)_{kt} &= \sum_{t=1}^k (4 / (5 - x_t)) (V_k)_{kt} = 4 |V_k| / \prod_{i=1}^k (5 - x_i) \\
 &= 4 |V_k| / \prod_{i=1}^k ((-1)^{ia+1} 4 / F_{ia}^2) \\
 &= (1/4^{k-1}) |V_k| \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia}.
 \end{aligned}$$

**Lemma 6:** Let  $u$  be a positive integer and let  $z_t$  be a real number for  $t = 1, 2, \dots, k$ .

$$\sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^i = 5^i \sum_{t=1}^k z_t \quad \text{for each } i, 1 \leq i \leq u,$$

if and only if

$$\sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^i = 5 \sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^{i-1} \quad \text{for each } i, 1 \leq i \leq u.$$

**Proof:** Let

$$\sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^i = 5^i \sum_{t=1}^k z_t \quad \text{for each } i, 1 \leq i \leq u.$$

Then, for  $i = 1$ ,

$$\sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t = 5 \sum_{t=1}^k z_t$$

# EXPANSION OF THE FIBONACCI NUMBERS

and, for  $2 \leq i \leq u$ ,

$$\sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^i = 5 \cdot 5^{i-1} \sum_{t=1}^k z_t = 5 \sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^{i-1}.$$

Conversely, we use mathematical induction on  $u$ . The case  $u = 1$  is true. For  $q \geq 1$ , assume that

$$\sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^i = 5 \sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^{i-1} \quad \text{for each } i, 1 \leq i \leq q,$$

implies

$$\sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^i = 5^i \sum_{t=1}^k z_t \quad \text{for each } i, 1 \leq i \leq q.$$

Now let

$$\sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^i = 5 \sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^{i-1} \quad \text{for each } i, 1 \leq i \leq q+1.$$

Then

$$\sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^i = 5 \sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^{i-1} \quad \text{for each } i, 1 \leq i \leq q$$

and

$$\sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^{q+1} = 5 \sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^q.$$

Therefore, by the induction hypothesis,

$$\sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^i = 5^i \sum_{t=1}^k z_t \quad \text{for each } i, 1 \leq i \leq q$$

and

$$\sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^{q+1} = 5 \sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^q.$$

Hence

$$\sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^i = 5^i \sum_{t=1}^k z_t \quad \text{for each } i, 1 \leq i \leq q,$$

and

$$\sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^{q+1} = 5 \cdot 5^q \sum_{t=1}^k z_t = 5^{q+1} \sum_{t=1}^k z_t.$$

Thus

$$\sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^i = 5^i \sum_{t=1}^k z_t \quad \text{for each } i, 1 \leq i \leq q+1.$$

The proof is complete by mathematical induction.

**Lemma 7:** Let  $z_t$  be a real number for  $t = 1, 2, \dots, k$ , and let  $j$  be a fixed integer.

$$\sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^{ta} z_t x_t^{j-1} / F_{ta}^2 = 0 \quad \text{if and only if} \quad \sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^j = 5 \sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^{j-1}.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Proof: } \sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^j &= \sum_{t=1}^k z_t (L_{ta}^2 / F_{ta}^2) x_t^{j-1} \\ &= \sum_{t=1}^k z_t ((5F_{ta}^2 + (-1)^{ta} 4) / F_{ta}^2) x_t^{j-1} \\ &= 5 \sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^{j-1} + 4 \sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^{ta} z_t x_t^{j-1} / F_{ta}^2. \end{aligned}$$

# EXPANSION OF THE FIBONACCI NUMBERS

**Corollary 1:** Let  $z_t$  be a real number for  $t = 1, 2, \dots, k$ .

$$\sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^{ta} z_t x_t^{i-1} / F_{ta}^2 = 0 \quad \text{for each } i, 1 \leq i \leq u$$

if and only if

$$\sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^i = 5^i \sum_{t=1}^k z_t \quad \text{for each } i, 1 \leq i \leq u.$$

**Proof:** Apply Lemma 6 and Lemma 7.

**Corollary 2:** Let  $k > 1$ . Then

$$\sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^{ta} F_{ta}^2 x_t^{i-1} (V_k)_{kt} = 5^{i-1} \sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^{ta} F_{ta}^2 (V_k)_{kt}$$

for each  $i, 1 \leq i \leq k$ .

**Proof:** In Corollary 1, let  $z_t = (-1)^{ta} F_{ta}^2 (V_k)_{kt}$  for  $t = 1, 2, \dots, k$ , and let  $u = k - 1$ . Then

$$\sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^{ta} z_t x_t^{i-1} / F_{ta}^2 = \sum_{t=1}^k x_t^{i-1} (V_k)_{kt} = 0$$

for each  $i, 1 \leq i \leq k - 1$ , since a determinant with two identical rows has numerical value zero. By Corollary 1,

$$\sum_{t=1}^k z_t x_t^i = 5^i \sum_{t=1}^k z_t$$

is true for each  $i, 1 \leq i \leq k - 1$ , and clearly is true for  $i = 0$ . Therefore,

$$\sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^{ta} F_{ta}^2 x_t^{i-1} (V_k)_{kt} = 5^{i-1} \sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^{ta} F_{ta}^2 (V_k)_{kt}$$

for each  $i, 1 \leq i \leq k$ .

## 3. THEOREMS

**Theorem 1:** For any positive integer  $k$ ,

$$(i) \quad 5^{j-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} = \sum_{t=1}^k \left[ \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] F_{ta}^{2k+2-2j} L_{ta}^{2j-1}$$

for  $1 \leq j \leq k$ , and

$$(ii) \quad 5^k \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} = \sum_{t=1}^k \left[ \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] L_{ta}^{2k+1} + 2^{2k} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia},$$

$$\text{and (iii)} \quad \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} = 5 \sum_{t=1}^k \left[ \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] F_{ta}^{2k+2} L_{ta}^{-1} \\ + (-1)^k 2^{2k} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2.$$

# EXPANSION OF THE FIBONACCI NUMBERS

**Proof:** The three identities are easily verified for  $k = 1$ . Assume that  $k > 1$ . Denote

$$A = \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \quad \text{and} \quad A_t = \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia}$$

for  $t = 1, 2, \dots, k$ , and

$$K = -|V_k| / 2^{2k-2} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia}.$$

By lemma 5,

$$KA = \sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^{ta} F_{ta}^2 (V_k)_{kt} \quad (8)$$

and, by Lemma 4,

$$KA_t = (-1)^{ta} (V_k)_{kt} / L_{ta} F_{ta}^{2k-2} \quad (9)$$

for  $t = 1, 2, \dots, k$ . Now, by Corollary 2 and equations (8) and (9) we have, for each  $j$ ,  $1 \leq j \leq k$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} 5^{j-1}KA &= 5^{j-1} \sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^{ta} F_{ta}^2 (V_k)_{kt} = \sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^{ta} F_{ta}^2 x_t^{j-1} (V_k)_{kt} \\ &= \sum_{t=1}^k KA_t x_t^{j-1} L_{ta} F_{ta}^{2k} = \sum_{t=1}^k KA_t (L_{ta}^{2j-2} / F_{ta}^{2j-2}) L_{ta} F_{ta}^{2k}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, for each  $j$ ,  $1 \leq j \leq k$ ,

$$5^{j-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} = \sum_{t=1}^k \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} F_{ta}^{2k-2j+2} L_{ta}^{2j-1}. \quad (10)$$

The proof of (i) is complete.

From equation (10), we obtain, for  $j = k$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} 5^{k-1}A &= \sum_{t=1}^k A_t F_{ta}^2 L_{ta}^{2k-1} = (1/5) \sum_{t=1}^k A_t (L_{ta}^2 + (-1)^{ta+1}4) L_{ta}^{2k-1} \\ &= (1/5) \sum_{t=1}^k A_t L_{ta}^{2k+1} - (4/5) \sum_{t=1}^k (-1)^{ta} A_t L_{ta}^{2k-1} \\ &= (1/5) \sum_{t=1}^k A_t L_{ta}^{2k+1} - (4/5K) \sum_{t=1}^k (L_{ta}^{2k-2} / F_{ta}^{2k-2}) (V_k)_{kt} \end{aligned}$$

by equation (9). Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} 5^{k-1}A &= (1/5) \sum_{t=1}^k A_t L_{ta}^{2k+1} - (4/5K) \sum_{t=1}^k x_t^{k-1} (V_k)_{kt} \\ &= (1/5) \sum_{t=1}^k A_t L_{ta}^{2k+1} - (4/5K) |V_k| \end{aligned}$$

# EXPANSION OF THE FIBONACCI NUMBERS

$$= (1/5) \sum_{t=1}^k A_t L_{ta}^{2k+1} + (2^{2k}/5) \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia}.$$

The proof of (ii) is complete.

From equation (10) we obtain, for  $j = 1$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \sum_{t=1}^k A_t F_{ta}^{2k} L_{ta} = \sum_{t=1}^k A_t F_{ta}^{2k} (5F_{ta}^2 + (-1)^{ta} 4) / L_{ta} \\ &= 5 \sum_{t=1}^k A_t F_{ta}^{2k+2} L_{ta}^{-1} + 4 \sum_{t=1}^k A_t (-1)^{ta} F_{ta}^{2k} L_{ta}^{-1} \\ &= 5 \sum_{t=1}^k A_t F_{ta}^{2k+2} L_{ta}^{-1} + (4/K) \sum_{t=1}^k (F_{ta}^2 / L_{ta}^2) (V_k)_{kt} \\ &= 5 \sum_{t=1}^k A_t F_{ta}^{2k+2} L_{ta}^{-1} + (4/K) \sum_{t=1}^k (1/x_t) (V_k)_{kt}. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, by Lemma 3,

$$\begin{aligned} A &= 5 \sum_{t=1}^k A_t F_{ta}^{2k+2} L_{ta}^{-1} + (4/K) (-1) |V_k| / \prod_{i=1}^k (-x_i) \\ &= 5 \sum_{t=1}^k A_t F_{ta}^{2k+2} L_{ta}^{-1} + (-1)^k 2^{2k} \left[ \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia}^2 \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2 \\ &= 5 \sum_{t=1}^k A_t F_{ta}^{2k+2} L_{ta}^{-1} + (-1)^k 2^{2k} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2. \end{aligned}$$

The proof of (iii) is complete.

**Lemma 8:** Let  $a$  and  $n$  be nonzero integers, let  $k$  and  $m$  be positive integers, and let  $\varepsilon = 0$  or  $\varepsilon = 1$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(i) For } m \leq 2k + 2 + 2\varepsilon, & 2^{m-1} F_{m1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \\ &= 5^\varepsilon 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{2k+1-m+2\varepsilon} L_{ta}^{-2\varepsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] \left[ F_{ta+n}^m + (-1)^{m+1} F_{ta-n}^m \right] \\ &\quad + (-1)^k \binom{m}{2\varepsilon-1} 2^{2k} F_n L_n^{m-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2 \\ &\quad + \binom{m}{2k+1+2\varepsilon} 5^\varepsilon 2^{2k} F_n^{2k+1+2\varepsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\varepsilon} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia}, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(ii) For } m \leq 2k + 2 + 2\varepsilon, & 5^{k+\varepsilon} 2^{m-1} F_{m1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \\ &= 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{1-2\varepsilon} L_{ta}^{2k-m+2\varepsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] \left[ L_{ta+n}^m + (-1)^{m+1} L_{ta-n}^m \right] \\ &\quad + \binom{m}{2\varepsilon-1} 5 \cdot 2^{2k} F_n L_n^{m-1} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia} + \end{aligned}$$

(continued)

# EXPANSION OF THE FIBONACCI NUMBERS

$$+ (-1)^k \binom{m}{2k+1+2\epsilon} 5^{2k+2\epsilon} 2^{2k} F_n^{2k+1+2\epsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2,$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(iii) For } m \leq 2k+1+2\epsilon, & 5^{k-1+\epsilon} 2^{m-1} L_{mm} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \\ &= 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{2-2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{2k-m-1+2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] \left[ L_{ta+n}^m + (-1)^{mm} L_{ta-n}^m \right] \\ &+ \left( 2\epsilon - 2 \right) 2^{2k} L_n^m \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \\ &+ (-1)^k \binom{m}{2k+2\epsilon} 5^{2k-1+2\epsilon} 2^{2k} F_n^{2k+2\epsilon} L_n^{m-2k-2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(iv) For } m \leq 2k+1+2\epsilon, & 2^{m-1} L_{mm} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \\ &= 5^\epsilon \cdot 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{2k-m+2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{1-2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] \left[ F_{ta+n}^m + (-1)^{mm} F_{ta-n}^m \right] \\ &+ (-1)^k \binom{m}{2\epsilon-2} 2^{2k} L_n^m \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2 \\ &+ \binom{m}{2k+2\epsilon} 5^\epsilon 2^{2k} F_n^{2k+2\epsilon} L_n^{m-2k-2\epsilon} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia}. \end{aligned}$$

**Proof:** (i) Let  $F_{ta}^{2k+1-m+2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} = b_t$  for  $1 \leq t \leq k$ . Then, by Theorem 1 (i),

$$5^{j-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} = \sum_{t=1}^k b_t F_{ta}^{m+1-2j-2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{2j-1+2\epsilon} \quad \text{for } 1 \leq j \leq k.$$

Thus,

$$5^{j-1-\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} = \sum_{t=1}^k b_t F_{ta}^{m+1-2j} L_{ta}^{2j-1} \quad \text{for } 1+\epsilon \leq j \leq k+\epsilon.$$

So

$$\begin{aligned} & \left( 2j - 1 \right) F_n^{2j-1} L_n^{m+1-2j} 5^{j-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \\ &= 5^\epsilon \sum_{t=1}^k b_t \binom{m}{2j-1} F_n^{2j-1} L_n^{m+1-2j} F_{ta}^{m+1-2j} L_{ta}^{2j-1} \quad \text{for } 1+\epsilon \leq j \leq k+\epsilon. \end{aligned}$$

Since, by hypothesis,  $m \leq 2k+2+2\epsilon$ , we have  $[(m-1)/2] \leq k+\epsilon$ . Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{j=1+\epsilon}^{\left[ \frac{m-1}{2} \right]} \binom{m}{2j-1} F_n^{2j-1} L_n^{m+1-2j} 5^{j-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \\ &= 5^\epsilon \sum_{t=1}^k b_t \sum_{j=1+\epsilon}^{\left[ \frac{m-1}{2} \right]} \binom{m}{2j-1} F_n^{2j-1} L_n^{m+1-2j} F_{ta}^{m+1-2j} L_{ta}^{2j-1}. \end{aligned}$$

By Theorem 1 (ii),



# EXPANSION OF THE FIBONACCI NUMBERS

$$5^k \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} = \sum_{t=1}^k b_t F_{ta}^{m-2k-1-2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{2k+1+2\epsilon} + 2^{2k} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia},$$

and by Theorem 1 (iii),

$$\begin{aligned} & 5^{-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \\ &= \sum_{t=1}^k b_t F_{ta}^{m+1-2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{2\epsilon-1} + (-1)^k 2^{2k} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / 5 \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} & \binom{m}{2k+1+2\epsilon} F_n^{2k+1+2\epsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\epsilon} 5^{k+\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \\ &= 5^\epsilon \sum_{t=1}^k b_t \binom{m}{2k+1+2\epsilon} F_n^{2k+1+2\epsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\epsilon} F_{ta}^{m-2k-1-2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{2k+1+2\epsilon} \\ & \quad + \binom{m}{2k+1+2\epsilon} 5^\epsilon 2^{2k} F_n^{2k+1+2\epsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\epsilon} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} & \binom{m}{2\epsilon-1} F_n^{2\epsilon-1} L_n^{m+1-2\epsilon} 5^{\epsilon-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \\ &= 5^\epsilon \sum_{t=1}^k b_t \binom{m}{2\epsilon-1} F_n^{2\epsilon-1} L_n^{m+1-2\epsilon} F_{ta}^{m+1-2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{2\epsilon-1} \\ & \quad + (-1)^k \binom{m}{2\epsilon-1} 5^\epsilon 2^{2k} F_n^{2\epsilon-1} L_n^{m+1-2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / 5 \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2. \end{aligned}$$

Since, by hypothesis,  $m \leq 2k+2+2\epsilon$ , we have  $[(m+1)/2] \leq k+1+\epsilon$ , and we have  $\binom{m}{2k+1+2\epsilon} = 0$  if and only if  $[(m+1)/2] < k+1+\epsilon$ . Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} & \binom{m}{2k+1+2\epsilon} F_n^{2[(m+1)/2]-1} L_n^{m+1-2[(m+1)/2]} 5^{[(m-1)/2]} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \\ &= 5^\epsilon \sum_{t=1}^k b_t \binom{m}{2k+1+2\epsilon} (F_n L_{ta})^{2[(m+1)/2]-1} (L_n F_{ta})^{m+1-2[(m+1)/2]} \\ & \quad + \binom{m}{2k+1+2\epsilon} 5^\epsilon 2^{2k} F_n^{2k+1+2\epsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\epsilon} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia}. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\binom{m}{-1} = 0$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{j=1}^{\left[ \frac{m+1}{2} \right]} \binom{m}{2j-1} F_n^{2j-1} L_n^{m+1-2j} 5^{j-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \\ &= 5^\epsilon \sum_{t=1}^k b_t \sum_{j=1}^{\left[ \frac{m+1}{2} \right]} \binom{m}{2j-1} F_n^{2j-1} L_n^{m+1-2j} F_{ta}^{m+1-2j} L_{ta}^{2j-1} + \end{aligned}$$

(continued)

# EXPANSION OF THE FIBONACCI NUMBERS

$$+ (-1)^k \binom{m}{2\epsilon - 1} 2^{2k} F_n L_n^{m-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2$$

$$+ \binom{m}{2k + 1 + 2\epsilon} 5^\epsilon 2^{2k} F_n^{2k+1+2\epsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\epsilon} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia}.$$

By Lemma 2 (i) and Lemma 2 (iii),

$$2^{m-1} F_{mn} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia}$$

$$= 5^\epsilon 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k b_t [F_{ta+n}^m + (-1)^{m+1} F_{ta-n}^m]$$

$$+ (-1)^k \binom{m}{2\epsilon - 1} 2^{2k} F_n L_n^{m-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2$$

$$+ \binom{m}{2k + 1 + 2\epsilon} 5^\epsilon 2^{2k} F_n^{2k+1+2\epsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\epsilon} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia}.$$

After substitution for  $b_t$ ,  $1 \leq t \leq k$ , the proof of (i) is complete. The proofs of (ii), (iii), and (iv) are similar.

From equations (5) and (6), we obtain the following four identities:

$$L_n + F_n = 2F_{n+1}, \quad L_n - F_n = 2F_{n-1}, \quad 5F_n + L_n = 2L_{n+1}, \quad 5F_n - L_n = 2L_{n-1}$$

for all integers  $n$ .

**Corollary 3:** Let  $\alpha$  and  $n$  be nonzero integers and let  $k$  and  $m$  be positive integers and let  $\epsilon = 0$  or  $\epsilon = 1$ . For  $m \leq 2k + 1 + 2\epsilon$ ,

$$(i) \quad 2^{m-1} F_{m+1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia}$$

$$= 5^\epsilon 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{2k-m+2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{-2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] [F_{ta+1}^m F_{ta+n}^m + (-1)^{mm} F_{ta-1}^m F_{ta-n}^m]$$

$$+ (-1)^k \left[ \binom{m}{2\epsilon - 2} L_n + \binom{m}{2\epsilon - 1} F_n \right] 2^{2k-1} L_n^{m-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2$$

$$+ \left[ \binom{m}{2k + 2\epsilon} L_n + \binom{m}{2k + 1 + 2\epsilon} F_n \right] 5^\epsilon 2^{2k-1} F_n^{2k+2\epsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\epsilon} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia},$$

and

$$(ii) \quad 2^{m-1} L_{m+1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia}$$

$$= 5^\epsilon 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{2k-m+2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{-2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] [L_{ta+1}^m F_{ta+n}^m + (-1)^{m+1} L_{ta-1}^m F_{ta-n}^m]$$

$$+ (-1)^k \left[ \binom{m}{2\epsilon - 2} L_n + \binom{m}{2\epsilon - 1} 5F_n \right] 2^{2k-1} L_n^{m-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2$$

$$+ \left[ \binom{m}{2k + 2\epsilon} L_n + \binom{m}{2k + 1 + 2\epsilon} 5F_n \right] 5^\epsilon 2^{2k-1} F_n^{2k+2\epsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\epsilon} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia},$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \text{(iii)} \quad 5^{k+\epsilon} 2^{m-1} F_{m+1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \\
 &= 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{1-2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{2k-m-1+2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] \left[ L_{ta+1} L_{ta+n}^m + (-1)^{mm} L_{ta-1} L_{ta-n}^m \right] \\
 &+ \left[ \binom{m}{2\epsilon-2} L_n + \binom{m}{2\epsilon-1} F_n \right] 5 \cdot 2^{2k-1} L_n^{m-1} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia} + (-1)^k \left[ \binom{m}{2k+2\epsilon} L_n \right. \\
 &+ \left. \binom{m}{2k+1+2\epsilon} F_n \right] 5^{2k+2\epsilon} 2^{2k-1} F_n^{2k+2\epsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2,
 \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \text{(iv)} \quad 5^{k-1+\epsilon} 2^{m-1} L_{m+1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \\
 &= 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{1-2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{2k-m-1+2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] \left[ F_{ta+1} L_{ta+n}^m + (-1)^{mm+1} F_{ta-1} L_{ta-n}^m \right] \\
 &+ \left[ \binom{m}{2\epsilon-2} L_n + \binom{m}{2\epsilon-1} 5 F_n \right] 2^{2k-1} L_n^{m-1} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia} + (-1)^k \left[ \binom{m}{2k+2\epsilon} L_n \right. \\
 &+ \left. \binom{m}{2k+1+2\epsilon} 5 F_n \right] 5^{2k-1+2\epsilon} 2^{2k-1} F_n^{2k+2\epsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2.
 \end{aligned}$$

**Proof:** (1) and (ii) follow from Lemma 8, parts (i) and (iv). (iii) and (iv) follow from Lemma 8, parts (ii) and (iii).

**Theorem 2:** Let  $\alpha$  and  $n$  be nonzero integers, let  $k$  and  $m$  be positive integers, let  $\epsilon = 0$  or  $\epsilon = 1$ , and let  $r$  be an integer. For  $m \leq 2k + 1 + 2\epsilon$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \text{(i)} \quad 2^{m-1} F_{m+r} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \\
 &= 5^\epsilon 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{2k-m+2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{-2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] \\
 &\times \left[ F_{ta+r} F_{ta+n}^m + (-1)^{mm+1+r} F_{ta-r} F_{ta-n}^m \right] \\
 &+ (-1)^k \left[ \binom{m}{2\epsilon-2} F_r L_n + \binom{m}{2\epsilon-1} L_r F_n \right] 2^{2k-1} L_n^{m-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2 \\
 &+ \left[ \binom{m}{2k+2\epsilon} F_r L_n + \binom{m}{2k+1+2\epsilon} L_r F_n \right] 5^\epsilon 2^{2k-1} F_n^{2k+2\epsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\epsilon} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia},
 \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \text{(ii)} \quad 2^{m-1} L_{m+r} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \\
 &= 5^\epsilon 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{2k-m+2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{-2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] \left[ L_{ta+r} F_{ta+n}^m + (-1)^{mm+r} L_{ta-r} F_{ta-n}^m \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

# EXPANSION OF THE FIBONACCI NUMBERS

$$+ (-1)^k \left[ \binom{m}{2\epsilon - 2} L_r L_n + \binom{m}{2\epsilon - 1} 5 F_r F_n \right] 2^{2k-1} L_n^{m-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2$$

$$+ \left[ \binom{m}{2k + 2\epsilon} L_r L_n + \binom{m}{2k + 1 + 2\epsilon} 5 F_r F_n \right] 5^\epsilon 2^{2k-1} F_n^{2k+2\epsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\epsilon} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia},$$

and

$$(iii) \quad 5^{k+\epsilon} 2^{m-1} F_{m+r} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia}$$

$$= 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{1-2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{2k-m-1+2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] \times$$

$$\times \left[ L_{ta+r} L_{ta+n}^m + (-1)^{m+1+r} L_{ta-r} L_{ta-n}^m \right]$$

$$+ \left[ \binom{m}{2\epsilon - 2} F_r L_n + \binom{m}{2\epsilon - 1} L_r F_n \right] 5 \cdot 2^{2k-1} L_n^{m-1} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia} + (-1)^k \left[ \binom{m}{2k + 2\epsilon} F_r L_n \right.$$

$$\left. + \binom{m}{2k + 1 + 2\epsilon} L_r F_n \right] 5^{2k+2\epsilon} 2^{2k-1} F_n^{2k+2\epsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2,$$

and

$$(iv) \quad 5^{k-1+\epsilon} 2^{m-1} L_{m+r} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia}$$

$$= 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{1-2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{2k-m-1+2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] \left[ F_{ta+r} L_{ta+n}^m + (-1)^{m+r} F_{ta-r} L_{ta-n}^m \right]$$

$$+ \left[ \binom{m}{2\epsilon - 2} L_r L_n + \binom{m}{2\epsilon - 1} 5 F_r F_n \right] 2^{2k-1} L_n^{m-1} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia} + (-1)^k \left[ \binom{m}{2k + 2\epsilon} L_r L_n \right.$$

$$\left. + \binom{m}{2k + 1 + 2\epsilon} 5 F_r F_n \right] 5^{2k-1+2\epsilon} 2^{2k-1} F_n^{2k+2\epsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2.$$

**Proof:** To prove (i), we use mathematical induction on  $r$ . The cases  $r = 0$  and  $r = 1$  are true by Lemma 8 (i) and Corollary 3 (i). Assume that the hypothesis is true for  $r = q$  and for  $r = q + 1$ , where  $q$  is an integer. Then

$$2^{m-1} F_{m+q+2} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia}$$

$$= 2^{m-1} F_{m+q+1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} + 2^{m-1} F_{m+q} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia}$$

$$= 5^\epsilon 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{2k-m+2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{-2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] (F_{ta+q+1} + F_{ta+q}) F_{ta+n}^m$$

$$+ 5^\epsilon 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{2k-m+2\epsilon} L_{ta}^{-2\epsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right]$$

$$\times (-1)^{m+q+1} (-F_{ta-q-1} + F_{ta-q}) F_{ta-n}^m + (-1)^k \left[ \binom{m}{2\epsilon - 2} (F_{q+1} + F_q) L_n + \right.$$

# EXPANSION OF THE FIBONACCI NUMBERS

$$\begin{aligned}
 & + \binom{m}{2\varepsilon - 1} (L_{q+1} + L_q) F_n \left[ 2^{2k-1} L_n^{m-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2 \right. \\
 & + \left[ \binom{m}{2k + 2\varepsilon} (F_{q+1} + F_q) L_n \right. \\
 & \left. + \binom{m}{2k + 1 + 2\varepsilon} (L_{q+1} + L_q) F_n \right] 5^\varepsilon 2^{2k-1} F_n^{2k+2\varepsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\varepsilon} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia}
 \end{aligned}$$

by the induction hypothesis. Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}
 & 2^{m-1} F_{m+q+2} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \\
 = & 5^\varepsilon 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{2k-m+2\varepsilon} L_{ta}^{-2\varepsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] F_{ta+q+2} F_{ta+n}^m \\
 & + 5^\varepsilon 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{2k-m+2\varepsilon} L_{ta}^{-2\varepsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] (-1)^{m+1+q} F_{ta-q-2} F_{ta-n}^m \\
 & + (-1)^k \left[ \binom{m}{2\varepsilon - 2} F_{q+2} L_n + \binom{m}{2\varepsilon - 1} L_{q+2} F_n \right] 2^{2k-1} L_n^{m-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2 \\
 & + \left[ \binom{m}{2k + 2\varepsilon} F_{q+2} L_n + \binom{m}{2k + 1 + 2\varepsilon} L_{q+2} F_n \right] 5^\varepsilon 2^{2k-1} F_n^{2k+2\varepsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\varepsilon} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned}
 & 2^{m-1} F_{m+q-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \prod_{i=1}^k F_{-ia} \\
 = & 5^\varepsilon 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{2k-m+2\varepsilon} L_{ta}^{-2\varepsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] F_{ta+q-1} F_{ta+n}^m \\
 & + 5^\varepsilon 2^{m-1} \sum_{t=1}^k F_{ta}^{2k-m+2\varepsilon} L_{ta}^{-2\varepsilon} \left[ \prod_{i=k+t+1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=k-t+1}^k F_{-ia} \right] (-1)^{m+q} F_{ta-q+1} F_{ta-n}^m \\
 & + (-1)^k \left[ \binom{m}{2\varepsilon - 2} F_{q-1} L_n + \binom{m}{2\varepsilon - 1} L_{q-1} F_n \right] 2^{2k-1} L_n^{m-1} \left[ \prod_{i=1}^k F_{ia} \right] \left[ \prod_{i=1}^{2k} F_{ia} \right] / \prod_{i=1}^k L_{ia}^2 \\
 & + \left[ \binom{m}{2k + 2\varepsilon} F_{q-1} L_n + \binom{m}{2k + 1 + 2\varepsilon} L_{q-1} F_n \right] 5^\varepsilon 2^{2k-1} F_n^{2k+2\varepsilon} L_n^{m-2k-1-2\varepsilon} \prod_{i=k+1}^{2k} F_{ia}.
 \end{aligned}$$

The proof of (i) is complete by mathematical induction. The proofs of (ii), (iii), and (iv) are similar.

The three identities given as examples in the introduction can be obtained as special cases of Theorem 2 (i) by using the ordered 6-tuple  $(\varepsilon, k, m, n, a, r)$  in the forms  $(0, 1, 2, n, a, 0)$ ,  $(0, 1, 3, n, a, 0)$ , and  $(0, 3, 6, n, a, 0)$ , respectively. A special case of Theorem 2 (ii) with the ordered 6-tuple  $(0, 1, 3, n, a, 0)$  can be found in [6].

The author thanks the referee for the type of proof used in Lemma 3 and for reference number [4] and for suggestions which led to major simplifications of

## EXPANSION OF THE FIBONACCI NUMBERS

several of the proofs, such as the proof of Lemma 2, and which brought the statement of Theorem 1 out of the realm of unintelligibility.

### REFERENCES

1. I. Dale Ruggles. "Some Fibonacci Results Using Fibonacci-Type Sequences." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 1, no. 2 (April 1963):75-80.
2. John H. Halton. "On a General Fibonacci Identity." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 3, no. 1 (February 1965):31-43.
3. A. S. Gladwin. "Expansion of the Fibonacci Numbers  $F_{nm}$  in  $n^{\text{th}}$  Powers of Fibonacci or Lucas Numbers." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 16, no. 3 (June 1978): 213-215.
4. Marvin Marcus & Henryk Minc. *A Survey of Matrix Theory and Matrix Inequalities*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1964.
5. John Vinson. "The Relation of the Period Modulo  $m$  to the Rank of Apparition of  $m$  in the Fibonacci Sequence." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 1, no. 2 (April 1963):37-45.
6. Gregory Wulczyn. Problem B-355. *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 15, no. 2 (April 1977):189. Solution by Graham Lord, *Ibid.*, 16, no. 2 (April 1978):186.

◆◆◆◆

# SOME COMBINATORIAL SEQUENCES

JOSEPH W. CREELY

31 Chatham Place, Vincetown, NJ 08088

(Submitted January 1983)

## 1. INTRODUCTION

We will enumerate the different  $m \times m$  matrices  $B_r(n)$ ,  $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ ,  $r = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ ,  $x_n$ , having elements from the set  $[0, 1]$ , where the allowed column vectors  $B_j$  and some conditions between elements  $b_{ij}$  are specified. That is,

$$C1: b_{ij} = 1 \Rightarrow b_{i,j-1} = 0,$$

$$C2: b_{ij} = 1 \Rightarrow \begin{cases} b_{i-1,j} = 0 \\ b_{i+1,j} = 0, m > i > 1, \end{cases}$$

and

$$b_{1j} = 1 \Rightarrow b_{2j} = 0,$$

$$b_{mj} = 1 \Rightarrow b_{m-1,j} = 0.$$

The number of different matrices  $B_r(n)$  is called  $x_n$  and is the general term of a combinatorial sequence  $\{x_n: n = 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ . The vector  $B_j = P_j$  is one of the  $p$  distinct column vectors in an  $m \times p$  matrix  $P$  called the primitive matrix. The vector  $P_j$  is named in accordance with the following rules:

1. The name of the zero vector is 0; the remaining vectors may be identified by the positions of 1's in them.
2. The numbers in these names, if more than one, are conveniently given in increasing order with a bar placed over them.
3. The dimension  $m$  of  $B_j$  is greater than or equal to the largest number in its name.

## EXAMPLES

Name of $P_j$	$P_j$
0	0 0 0 ... 0
1	1 0 0 ... 0
2	0 1 0 ... 0
$\overline{12}$	1 1 0 ... 0
$\overline{13}$	1 0 1 0 ... 0
$\overline{123}$	1 1 1 0 ... 0

# SOME COMBINATORIAL SEQUENCES

$m$	Some Primitive Matrices $P$	
	Under C2	Unrestricted
1	(0 1)	(0 1)
2	(0 1 2)	(0 1 $\overline{12}$ 2)
3	(0 1 $\overline{13}$ 2 3)	(0 1 $\overline{12}$ $\overline{123}$ $\overline{13}$ 2 $\overline{23}$ 3)
4	(0 1 $\overline{13}$ $\overline{14}$ 2 $\overline{24}$ 3 4)	(0 1 $\overline{12}$ $\overline{123}$ $\overline{1234}$ $\overline{124}$ $\overline{13}$ $\overline{134}$ $\overline{14}$ 2 $\overline{23}$ $\overline{234}$ $\overline{24}$ 3 $\overline{34}$ 4)
Size	$m \times F_{m+2}$	$m \times 2^m$

Any figure consisting of a succession of like segments each of which is divided into  $m$  cells which can be occupied by either a 1 or a 0 under given conditions may be represented by a matrix  $B_r(n)$  in which  $n$  is the number of segments in the figure. The cells in any segment must be numbered in a given way (1, 2, 3, ...,  $m$ ) and correspond to the row numbers in  $B_r(n)$ . Figures in which only cells of like number in adjacent segments are adjacent are said to be *regular*. This adjacency condition (AC) is symbolized by  $b_i \rightarrow b_i$ . Figures in which at least one cell  $b_{ij}$  in the  $j^{\text{th}}$  segment is adjacent to more than one cell in the  $(j+1)^{\text{st}}$  segment ( $b_{s,j+1}, b_{t,j+1}, \dots$ ) are said to be *irregular*. This AC is symbolized by  $b_i \rightarrow b_s, b_t, \dots$  (see Fig. 1).

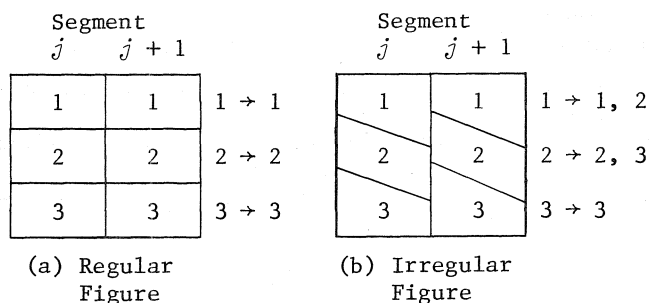


Figure 1

Consider a prism of  $n$  segments formed of segments of unit height on bases  $A$  or  $B$  (Figure 2). If the segments have equal bases  $A$  or  $B$ ,  $P = (0 \ 1 \ 2 \ 3)$  is a possible primitive matrix and  $b_i \rightarrow b_i$ . If the successive segments have bases that alternate between  $A$  and  $B$ ,  $P$  may be unchanged but  $1 \rightarrow 2, 3$ ;  $2 \rightarrow 1$ ;  $3 \rightarrow 1$ . Condition 1 may be replaced by the more general condition C3: any two adjacent cells, each from a different segment cannot both contain the number 1.

The matrix  $P$  has a companion matrix  $\overline{P}$  in which the column  $P_j$  has a counterpart  $\overline{P}_j$  in  $\overline{P}$  obtained by applying the given AC,  $b_i \rightarrow b_s, b_t, \dots$ , to each number  $i$  in the name of  $P_j$  and ordering the resulting numbers without repetition. A bar is placed over these numbers to distinguish the columns of  $\overline{P}$ . That is, if  $P = (1 \ \overline{12} \ \overline{13} \ 2 \ 3)$  in Figure 1(b), then  $\overline{P} = (\overline{12} \ \overline{123} \ \overline{123} \ \overline{23} \ 3)$ .



# SOME COMBINATORIAL SEQUENCES

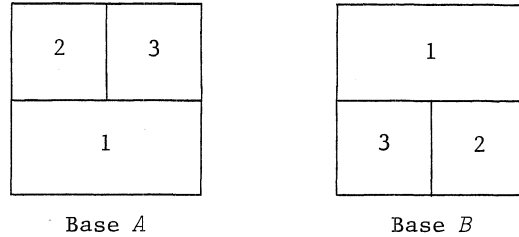


Figure 2

Define the  $(p+1) \times 1$  set matrix  $M(1)$  with elements consisting of sets of matrices such that  $m_1(1) = \emptyset$ , the empty set, and  $m_i(1) = [P_{i-1}]$ , where  $p+1 \geq i > 1$  and  $L$  is the  $(p+1) \times (p+1)$  partitioned matrix

$$L = \begin{pmatrix} U^T \\ \hline 0 \mid K \end{pmatrix},$$

where  $0$  is the  $p \times 1$  zero vector,  $U$  is  $(p+1) \times 1$  with  $u_1 = 0$ , and  $u_i = 1$  if  $p+1 \geq i > 1$ . A matrix  $K$ , called the kernel, is  $p \times p$  with  $K_{ij} \in [0, 1]$  and is a function of  $P$  and the given  $AC$  as described later.

A special product is defined for  $L$  and a conforming set matrix generating another set matrix as a product.

$$L \cdot M(n-1) = M(n), \quad n > 1, \quad (1.1)$$

hence

$$(L.)^{n-1} M(1) = M(n). \quad (1.2)$$

The expression  $\ell_{ji} m_i(n-1)(P_{j-1})$  represents the result of augmenting each member of the set  $m_i(n-1)$  by appending the vector  $P_{j-1}$  on the right if  $\ell_{ji} = 1$ . If  $\ell_{ji} = 0$ , this expression represents  $\emptyset$ .

$$m_1(n) = \bigcup_2^{p+1} \ell_{1i} m_i(n-1)$$

$$m_j(n) = \bigcup_2^{p+1} \ell_{ji} m_i(n-1)(P_{j-1}), \quad j > 1.$$

Define  $N(1)$  as the vector with  $n_1(1) = 0$  and  $n_j(1) = 1$  if  $p+1 \geq j > 1$ . Let

$$LN(n-1) = N(n), \quad n > 1. \quad (1.3)$$

The sets  $m_j(n)$ ,  $p+1 \geq j > 1$  are disjoint, and their cardinality is unchanged by appending columns to their matrix elements. It can be shown by mathematical induction that  $N(n)$  is a vector with  $n_1(n) = x_{n-1}$  and that  $n_j(n)$  is the number of matrices  $B_r(n)$  having  $P_{j-1}$  for the  $n^{\text{th}}$  column.

Let  $N_n$  be the  $p \times 1$  matrix with  $n_i(n) = n_{i+1}(n)$ ,  $p \geq i > 1$ , then

$$x_n = n_1(n+1) = \sum_2^{p+1} n_i(n) = \sum_1^p n_i(n). \quad (1.4)$$

# SOME COMBINATORIAL SEQUENCES

Example: Let  $B_r(n)$  represent a  $2 \times n$  matrix with  $P = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ . If C1 holds,

$$k = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad M(1) = \begin{bmatrix} \emptyset \\ [0] \\ [1] \end{bmatrix}, \quad N(1) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and } L = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

$$LM(n-1) = M(n) \quad \text{and} \quad LN(n-1) = N(n),$$

$$\text{so } M(1) = \begin{bmatrix} \emptyset \\ [0] \\ [1] \end{bmatrix}, \quad N(1) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$M(2) = \begin{bmatrix} [0, 1] \\ [00, 10] \\ [01] \end{bmatrix}, \quad N(2) = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad x_1 = 2,$$

$$M(3) = \begin{bmatrix} [00, 10, 01] \\ [000, 100, 010] \\ [001, 101] \end{bmatrix}, \quad N(3) = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad x_2 = 3, \\ x_n = F_{n+2}.$$

Equation (1.3) implies

$$KN(n) = N(n+1) \tag{1.5}$$

so

$$K^n N(1) = N(n+1). \tag{1.6}$$

Let kernel  $K_r$  yield a value  $n_1(n+1) = x_{rn}$ , then if  $K_1$  and  $K_2$  yield  $x_{1n} = x_{2n}$  they are said to be *virtually equivalent* and  $K_1 \approx K_2$ . Virtual equivalence is an equivalence relation.

Let  $Q_r$  represent a  $p \times p$  permutation matrix, i.e., a square matrix whose elements in any row or column are all zero except for one element which is one. There are  $p!$  such matrices and since  $Q_r Q_r^T = I$ ,  $Q_r^T = Q_r^{-1}$ . From Equation (1.6),  $K^{n-1} N(1) = N(n)$  and, if  $K$  is replaced by  $Q_r K Q_r^{-1}$ ,

$$(Q_r K Q_r^{-1})^{n-1} N(1) = Q_r K^{n-1} Q_r^T N(1) = Q_r K^{n-1} N(1) = Q_r N(n).$$

From Equation (1.4),  $x_n = \sum_1^p n_i(n)$  for  $K$  and for  $Q_r K Q_r^T$ ; the  $n_i(n)$  are summed in possibly a different order. The result is the same, so

$$Q_r K Q_r^T \approx K. \tag{1.7}$$

Let  $K_r$  be a  $p_r \times p_r$  kernel,  $r = 1, 2, 3$ , and define the direct sum

$$K_1 \oplus K_2 = \begin{bmatrix} k_1 & 0 \\ 0 & k_2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

# SOME COMBINATORIAL SEQUENCES

Permutation matrices  $Q_s$  and  $Q_s^T$  can be constructed so that

$$Q_s(K_1 \oplus K_2)Q_s^T = K_2 \oplus K_1.$$

If  $q_{ij} \in Q_s$ , then  $q_{ij} = 1$  if

$i$	1	2	...	$p_2$	$p_2 + 1$	$p_2 + 2$	...	$p_2 + p_1$
$j$	$p_1 + 1$	$p_1 + 2$	...	$p_1 + p_2$	1	2	...	$p_1$

and  $q_{ij} = 0$  otherwise. Let  $p_1 = 2$  and  $p_2 = 3$ , then

$$Q_s = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

From Equation (1.7),

$$K_1 \oplus K_2 \approx K_2 \oplus K_1. \quad (1.8)$$

Define the direct product  $K_1 \times K_2$  as the partitioned matrix

$$K_1 \times K_2 = \begin{bmatrix} k_{111}K_2 & k_{112}K_2 & \dots & k_{11p_1}K_2 \\ k_{121}K_2 & k_{122}K_2 & \dots & k_{12p_1}K_2 \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ k_{1p_11}K_2 & k_{1p_12}K_2 & \dots & k_{1p_1p_1}K_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

in which  $k_{1rs} \in K_1$  and  $k_{2tu} \in K_2$ .

Let

$$k_{1rs}k_{2tu} = \begin{cases} k'_{iv} \in K_1 \times K_2 \\ k''_{jw} \in K_2 \times K_1 \end{cases},$$

then

$$i = (r - 1)p_2 + t \quad (a)$$

and

$$j = (t - 1)p_1 + r. \quad (b)$$

From Equation (a),

$$t - 1 = (i - 1) \bmod p_2 \quad (c)$$

and

$$r - 1 = \left\lfloor \frac{i - 1}{p_2} \right\rfloor, \quad (d)$$

in which  $[x]$  represents the greatest integer in the number  $x$ . Substituting Equations (c) and (d) in (b),

$$j = p_1((i - 1) \bmod p_2) + \left\lfloor \frac{i - 1}{p_2} \right\rfloor + 1. \quad (e)$$

# SOME COMBINATORIAL SEQUENCES

If  $i, j, r$ , and  $t$  are replaced by  $v, w, s$ , and  $u$ , respectively, Equations (a)-(e) still hold and Equation (e) becomes

$$w = p_1((v - 1) \bmod p_2) + \left\lfloor \frac{v - 1}{p_2} \right\rfloor + 1. \quad (f)$$

Consider a matrix  $Q$  where  $q_{ij} = 1$  if Equation (e) is satisfied and  $q_{ij} = 0$  otherwise. From Equation (a) if  $i$  is given,  $r$  and  $t$  are uniquely defined, and from Equation (b)  $j$  is uniquely defined. Conversely, if  $j$  is given, then  $i$  is uniquely defined. This implies that every row and column of  $Q$  has just one element 1 and all other elements are zero.  $Q$  is then a permutation matrix.

Consider the matrix  $Q'$  where  $q'_{vw} = 1$  if Equation (f) is satisfied and  $q'_{vw} = 0$  otherwise. By a similar argument,  $Q'$  is also a permutation matrix and since  $j$  and  $i$  may replace  $w$  and  $v$ , respectively, in Equation (f) to produce Equation (e), then we let  $Q_p = Q' = Q$  so that

$$Q_p(K_1 \times K_2)Q_p^T = K_2 \times K_1.$$

From Equation (1.7),

$$K_1 \times K_2 \approx K_2 \times K_1. \quad (1.9)$$

For example, if  $p_1 = 2$  and  $p_2 = 3$ ,

$$Q_p = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Let

$$K_3 = K_1 \oplus K_2 = \begin{bmatrix} K_1 & 0 \\ 0 & K_2 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } N_3(1) = \begin{bmatrix} N_1(1) \\ N_2(1) \end{bmatrix}$$

then

$$K_3^{n-1} = \begin{bmatrix} K_1^{n-1} & 0 \\ 0 & K_2^{n-1} \end{bmatrix}$$

and, by Equation (1.6)

$$N_3(n) = \begin{bmatrix} N_1(n) \\ N_2(n) \end{bmatrix}$$

Applying Equation (1.4),

$$x_{3n} = x_{1n} + x_{2n} \text{ if } K_3 = K_1 \oplus K_2. \quad (1.10)$$

Suppose  $K_3 = K_1 \times K_2$  with  $N_3(1) = N_1(1) \times N_2(1)$ , a  $p_1 p_2 \times 1$  matrix of 1's. Then, by Equation (1.4),  $x_{31} = x_{11} x_{21}$ . Assume that  $N_3(r) = N_1(r) \times N_2(r)$  for any  $r > 0$ , then

$$K_3 N_3(r) = (K_1 \times K_2)(N_2(r) \times N_1(r)) = \sum_{j=1}^{p_1} k_{1ij} n_{1ji}(r) K_2 N_2(r), \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, p_1,$$

## SOME COMBINATORIAL SEQUENCES

or  $K_3 N_3(r) = K_1 N_1(r) \times K_2 N_2(r)$ , and by Equation (1.5),

$$N_3(r+1) = N_1(r+1) \times N_2(r+1).$$

It follows by mathematical induction that  $N_3(n) = N_1(n) \times N_2(n)$  for all  $n$  and, from Equation (1.4),

$$x_{3n} = x_{1n} x_{2n} \quad \text{if } K_3 = K_1 \times K_2. \quad (1.11)$$

From definitions

$$(K_1 \oplus K_2) \times K_3 = (K_1 \times K_3) \oplus (K_2 \times K_3), \quad (1.12)$$

32 virtual equivalences may be deduced using the commutative laws for  $\oplus$  and  $\times$ .

## 2. EVALUATION OF $K$

**Theorem 2.1:** If C3 holds, and if  $\overline{P}_i$  and  $P_j$  have one or more numbers common in their names, then  $k_{ij} = 0$ ; if  $\overline{P}_i$  and  $P_j$  have no numbers common in their names, then  $k_{ij} = 1$ .

**Proof:** From Equation (1.1),  $L \cdot M(n-1) = M(n)$ , and by renumbering elements,

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ 0 & k_{11} & k_{12} & \dots & k_{1p} \\ 0 & k_{21} & k_{22} & \dots & k_{2p} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ 0 & k_{p1} & k_{p2} & \dots & k_{pp} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} m_0(n-1) \\ m_1(n-1) \\ m_2(n-1) \\ \vdots \\ m_p(n-1) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} m_0(n) \\ m_1(n) \\ m_2(n) \\ \vdots \\ m_p(n) \end{bmatrix}.$$

Through multiplication,

$$m_0(n) = \bigcup_{i=1}^p m_i(n-1)(\emptyset) = \bigcup_{i=1}^p m_i(n-1),$$

$$m_j(n) = \bigcup_{i=1}^p k_{ji} m_i(n-1)(P_j), \quad j = 1, 2, \dots, p,$$

where  $m_i(n-1)(P_j)$  represents the set  $m_i(n-1)$  in which each element  $B_r(n-1)$  has  $P_i$  as the terminal column and is augmented by the vector  $P_j$  to form a matrix  $B'_r(n)$ . The last two columns of  $B'_r(n)$  are  $P_i$  and  $P_j$ . If  $P_i$  has one or more elements of value one adjacent to a like element in  $P_j$ , the name of  $\overline{P}_i$  must have one or more numbers in common with the name of  $P_j$ , and C3 implies  $B'_r(n) \notin m_j(n)$ , hence  $k_{ij} = 0$ . If  $P_i$  has no elements of value one adjacent to a like element in  $P_j$ , the name of  $\overline{P}_i$  and the name of  $P_j$  must have no numbers in common and C3 implies  $B'_r(n) \in m_j(n)$ , so  $k_{ij} = 1$ . ■

Let  $R = \overline{P}_i^T P_j = (r_{11})$ , a  $1 \times 1$  matrix. Then

**Corollary 2.1:** If C3 holds and  $r_{11} = 0$ ,  $k_{ij} = 1$ ; if  $r_{11} > 0$ ,  $k_{ij} = 0$ .

**Corollary 2.2:** If C1 holds,  $K$  is symmetric.

**Proof:** If C1 holds,  $P_i = \overline{P}_i$ , so  $R = (r_{11}) = R^T$  and  $\overline{P}_i^T P_j = P_i^T P_j = P_j^T P_i = \overline{P}_j^T P_i$ . By Corollary 2.1, if  $r_{11} = 0$ ,  $k_{ij} = k_{ji} = 1$ ; if  $r_{11} > 0$ ,  $k_{ij} = k_{ji} = 0$ . Since

# SOME COMBINATORIAL SEQUENCES

$r_{11} \geq 0$ ,  $k_{ij} = k_{ji}$  and  $K$  is symmetric. ■

**Corollary 2.3:** If C3 holds and  $P_i = 0$ , then  $k_{ij} = 1$  for all  $j$ ;  $P_i \neq 0$  implies  $k_{ii} = 0$ .

**Corollary 2.4:** If C3 holds, then  $K$  can have at most one row of 1's.

Let  $X = [x_i : i = 1, 2, 3, \dots, r]$ ,  $m \geq r > 0$ , be the set of all the different numbers appearing in the names of the columns of  $P$  and in the  $AC$ , and let  $Y = [y_i : i = 1, 2, 3, \dots, r]$  be any other set of  $r$  distinct numbers, then

**Corollary 2.5:**  $K$  is unchanged by replacing  $x_i$  by  $y_i$ ,  $i = 1, 2, 3, \dots, r$ , in  $P$  and in the  $AC$  under C3.

**Definition:** A proper  $K$  is a  $K$  in which there is at most one row of 1's.

**Theorem 2.2:** Every proper  $K$  may be derived from some  $P$  under C3 and  $AC$ .

**Proof:** Given  $k_{ij} \in [0, 1]$ . If a row  $K_i$  consists only of 1's, it is named 0 and the remaining rows are named 1, 2, 3, ...,  $p - 1$ . If no such row exists, name the rows 1, 2, 3, ...,  $p$ . Then  $P$  consists of columns  $P_j$  which are in the same sequence as the named rows of  $K$  and have the same names. Suppose  $K_i$  has an element  $k_{ij} = 0$ , then the  $AC$  must include  $i \rightarrow j$ ; if  $k_{ij} = 1$ , then  $i \neq j$ . Since  $K$  is proper, there is at most one row of 1's which is named 0. All columns of  $P$  have names which are unique. ■

The  $AC$  under C3 may sometimes be simplified by changing the columns of  $P$  without altering  $K$ . Let  $d$ ,  $e$ , and  $f$  represent three distinct cells in a segment  $B_j$  of  $B_r(n)$  and let  $r$ ,  $s$ , and  $r \cup s$  represent sets of cells in  $B_{j+1}$  adjacent to  $d$ ,  $e$ , and  $f$ , respectively. The adjacency conditions are represented by the set  $[d \rightarrow r, e \rightarrow s, f \rightarrow r \cup s]$ , and  $f$  may be replaced by  $\overline{de}$  in the names of  $P_j$  and in  $AC$  forming  $P'$  and the set  $AC = [d \rightarrow r, e \rightarrow s]$  which, by Theorem 2.1, yields the same  $K$ .

**Example:** Let

$$K = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

By Theorem 2.2,  $K$  may be derived from  $P = (1 \ 2 \ 3 \ 4 \ 5 \ 6 \ 7)$  under C3 with the  $AC$

1  $\rightarrow$  1, 2, 3, 4  
 2  $\rightarrow$  1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6  
 3  $\rightarrow$  1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7  
 4  $\rightarrow$  1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 7  
 5  $\rightarrow$  2, 3, 5, 6  
 6  $\rightarrow$  2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7  
 7  $\rightarrow$  3, 4, 6, 7.

The  $AC$  may be simplified as follows:

# SOME COMBINATORIAL SEQUENCES

Consider:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &\rightarrow 2, 3, 1, 4 \\ 2 &\rightarrow 2, 3, 1, 4, 5, 6 \\ 5 &\rightarrow 2, 3, 5, 6 \end{aligned}$$

We can then replace 2 by  $\overline{15}$ . Similarly we can replace 3 by  $\overline{24}$ , 4 by  $\overline{17}$ , and 6 by  $\overline{57}$ , so  $P$  becomes  $P' = (1 \ \overline{15} \ \overline{157} \ \overline{17} \ \overline{5} \ \overline{57} \ 7)$ . By renumbering in accordance with Corollary 2.5,  $P' = (1 \ \overline{12} \ \overline{123} \ \overline{13} \ 2 \ \overline{23} \ 3)$  with

$$AC = [1 \rightarrow 1; 2 \rightarrow 2; 3 \rightarrow 3].$$

Further examples giving  $P$ ,  $AC$ ,  $K$ ,  $x_n$ , and recurrence relations are:

- #1  $P = (0 \ 1)$   
 $AC = [1 \rightarrow 1]$   
 $x_n = \{2, 3, 5, 8, 13, \dots\}$   
 $x_{n+2} - x_{n+1} - x_n = 0$   
 $K = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$
- #2  $P = (0 \ 1 \ 2)$   
 $AC = [1 \rightarrow 1; 2 \rightarrow 2]$   
 $x_n = \{3, 7, 17, 41, 99, 239, \dots\}$   
 $x_{n+2} - 2x_{n+1} - x_n = 0$   
 $K = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$
- #3  $P = (1 \ 2)$   
 $AC = [1 \rightarrow 1, 2; 2 \rightarrow 1, 2]$   
 $x_n = \{2, 0, 0, \dots\}$   
 $x_{n+1} = 0$   
 $K = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$
- #4  $P = (0 \ 1 \ 2)$   
 $AC = [1 \rightarrow 1, 2; 2 \rightarrow 1, 2]$   
 $x_n = \{3, 5, 11, 21, 43, 85, \dots\}$   
 $x_{n+2} - x_{n+1} - 2x_n = 0$   
 $K = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$
- #5  $P = (1 \ 2 \ 3 \ 4 \ 5)$   
 $AC = [1 \rightarrow 3, 4, 5; 2 \rightarrow 2, 3, 4, 5;$   
 $3 \rightarrow 1, 2; 4 \rightarrow 1, 2, 4;$   
 $5 \rightarrow 1, 2, 5]$   
 $x_n = \{5, 10, 22, 49, 112, 260, \dots\}$   
 $x_{n+4} - 3x_{n+3} + 3x_{n+1} + x_n = 0$   
 $K = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$
- #6  $P = (0 \ 1 \ 2 \ 3)$   
 $AC = [1 \rightarrow 1, 3; 2 \rightarrow 2, 3; 3 \rightarrow 1, 2, 3]$   
 also  $P = (0 \ 1 \ 2 \ \overline{12})$   
 $AC = [1 \rightarrow 1; 2 \rightarrow 2]$   
 $x_n = \{4, 9, 25, 64, 169, 441, \dots\}$   
 $x_{n+4} - x_{n+3} - 4x_{n+2} - x_{n+1} + x_n = 0$   
 $K = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

Example #1 represents the sequence  $x_n = F_{n+2}$ . Examples #2 and #4 represent sequences of Winthrop and Horadam [2],  $x_n = w_n(1, 3; 2, -1)$  and  $x_n = w_n(1, 3; 1, -2)$ , respectively, where  $w(a, b; p, q)$  has  $w_0 = a$ ,  $w_1 = b$ , and  $w_n = pw_{n-1} - qw_{n-2}$ ,  $n \geq 2$ . Example #5 illustrates  $K_3 = K_1 \oplus K_2$  with  $x_n = F_{n+2} + w_n(1, 3; 2, -1)$ , and Example #6 illustrates  $K_3 = K_1 \times K_2$  with  $x_n = (F_{n+2})^2$  in which two values for  $P$  and the corresponding  $AC$  are given.

3. RECURRENCE RELATIONS

The characteristic function of  $K$  is  $f(y) = |yI - K|$  and its characteristic equation is

$$f(y) = \sum_0^p c_i y^i = 0. \quad (3.1)$$

**Theorem 3.1:**

$$\sum_0^p c_i x_{n+i} = 0$$

is a recurrence relation for the sequence  $\{x_n : n = 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ .

**Proof:** Apply the Cayley-Hamilton theorem to Equation (3.1), giving

$$\sum_0^p c_i K^i = 0.$$

Multiply each side of this on the right by  $K^{n-1}N(1)$ , giving

$$\sum_0^p c_i K^{n-1+i} N(1).$$

Then, by Equation (1.6),

$$\sum_0^p c_i N(n+i) = 0.$$

Multiply on the left by  $U^T$ , a  $1 \times p$  matrix with  $u_{1i} = 1$ , giving

$$\sum_0^p c_i \sum_0^p n_j(n+i) = 0,$$

and by Equation (1.4),

$$\sum_0^p c_i x_{n+i} = 0.$$

This is a recurrence relation for the sequence  $\{x_n : n = 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ . ■

**Corollary 3.1:** If the characteristic equation of  $K$  is

$$(y - d) \sum_0^{p-1} c_i y^i = 0$$

and if  $K - dI$  is nonsingular, then

$$\sum_0^{p-1} c_i x_{n+i} = 0$$

is a recurrence relation for  $\{x_n : n = 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ .



# SOME COMBINATORIAL SEQUENCES

**Proof:** By the Cayley-Hamilton theorem,

$$(K - dI) \sum_0^{p-1} c_i K^i = 0.$$

If  $K - dI$  is nonsingular, apply its inverse to both sides of the equation, so

$$\sum_0^{p-1} c_i x^i = 0.$$

Proceed as in Theorem 3.1 to show that  $\sum_0^{p-1} c_i x_{n+i} = 0$  is the desired recurrence relation. ■

Note that if  $N(1)$ , in which  $n_{i1} = 1$ , were defined as some other vector of size  $p \times 1$ , the new sequence  $\{x_n\}$  would still possess the same recurrence relation.

Let

$$f_j(y) = \sum_0^{p_j} c_{jq} y^q = 0$$

represent the characteristic equation for  $K_j: j = 1, 2, 3$ .

**Theorem 3.2:** If  $K_3 = K_1 \oplus K_2$ , a recurrence relation for the sequence  $\{x_{3n}: n = 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$  is

$$\sum_0^{p_1+p_2} c_{1q} c_{2r} x_{3(n+1)} = 0.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Proof: } \sum_0^{p_3} c_{3i} y^i &= \begin{vmatrix} yI - K_1 & 0 \\ 0 & yI - K_2 \end{vmatrix} = |yI - K_1| |yI - K_2| \\ &= \sum_0^{p_1} c_{1q} y^q \sum_0^{p_2} c_{2r} y^r, \end{aligned}$$

then

$$c_{3i} = \sum_{q+r=i} c_{1q} c_{2r}$$

and, from Theorem 3.1, the recurrence relation for the sequence  $\{x_{3n}: n = 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$  is

$$\sum_0^{p_1+p_2} c_{1q} c_{2r} x_{3(n+i)} = 0. \quad \blacksquare$$

**Corollary 3.2:** If  $K_3 = 2K_1$ , the recurrence relation for  $x_{3n}$  is

$$\sum_0^{p_1} c_{1i} x_{n+i} = 0.$$

Consider the direct product  $K_3 = K_1 \times K_2$ . Let  $K_1$  be partitioned into four square matrices.

$$K_1 = \begin{bmatrix} A_1 & A_2 \\ A_3 & A_4 \end{bmatrix}, \quad K_1 \times K_2 = \begin{bmatrix} A_1 \times K_2 & A_2 \times K_2 \\ A_3 \times K_2 & A_4 \times K_2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

# SOME COMBINATORIAL SEQUENCES

Let  $Q = yI - K_3$ , then

$$Q = \begin{bmatrix} yI - A_1 \times K_2 & -A_2 \times K_2 \\ -A_3 \times K_2 & yI - A_4 \times K_2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Multiply the top row of  $Q$  by  $(A_3 \times K_2)(yI - A_1 \times K_2)^{-1}$  and add this to the second row [1], then

$$|Q| = \begin{vmatrix} yI - A_1 \times K_2 & -A_2 \times K_2 \\ 0 & yI - A_4 \times K_2 - (A_3 \times K_2)(yI - A_1 \times K_2)^{-1}(A_2 \times K_2) \end{vmatrix}.$$

If  $A_1$  and  $A_3$  commute, then

$$|Q| = |(yI - A_1 \times K_2)(yI - A_4 \times K_2) - (A_3 \times K_2)(A_2 \times K_2)| = 0$$

is the characteristic equation for  $K_3$ . This reduces to

$$|y^2I - y(A_1 + A_4) \times K_2 + (A_1A_4 - A_3A_2) \times K_2^2| = 0. \quad (3.2)$$

The recurrence relation for the sequence  $\{x_{3n} : n = 1, 2, 3, \dots\}$  may then be derived if  $K_1$  and  $K_2$  are known.

Example: Let  $K_1 = \begin{bmatrix} A_1 & A_2 \\ A_3 & A_4 \end{bmatrix}$  where  $K_2 = A_1 = A_2 = A_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$  and  $A_4 = 0$ .

From Equation (3.2), the characteristic equation is

$$|yI - K_3| = \left| y^2I - y \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 2 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \right| = 0$$

or

$$y^8 - y^7 - 13y^6 - 8y^5 + 20y^4 + 8y^3 - 13y^2 + y + 1 = 0.$$

The recurrence relation for the sequence  $\{x_n = (F_{n+2})^3\}$  is

$$x_{n+8} - x_{n+7} - 13x_{n+6} - 8x_{n+5} + 20x_{n+4} + 8x_{n+3} - 13x_{n+2} + x_{n+1} + x_n = 0.$$

## REFERENCES

1. F. R. Gantemacher. *The Theory of Matrices*, Vol. I. New York: Chelsea Publishing Company, 1959.
2. A. F. Horadam. "Basic Properties of a Certain Generalized Sequence of Numbers." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 3, no. 3 (1965):161.

◆◆◆◆◆

# HYPERSURFACES ASSOCIATED WITH SIMSON FORMULA ANALOGUES

A. F. HORADAM

University of New England, Armidale, N.S.W., Australia 2351

(Submitted November 1983)

## 1. INTRODUCTION

The *Simson formula* for the Fibonacci numbers  $F_n$  defined by

$$\text{is } F_{n+2} = F_{n+1} + F_n, F_0 = 0, F_1 = 1, \quad (1.1)$$

$$F_{n+1}F_{n-1} - F_n^2 = (-1)^n, \quad (1.2)$$

which may be expressed in determinant form as

$$\begin{vmatrix} F_{n+1} & F_n \\ F_n & F_{n-1} \end{vmatrix} = (-1)^n. \quad (1.2)'$$

For the numbers  $w_n$  defined by the generalized second-order recurrence relation

$$w_{n+2} = pw_{n+1} - qw_n, w_0 = a, w_1 = b, \quad (1.3)$$

a Simson formula was obtained in [3]. If, in this generalized Simson formula, we write  $w_n = x$ ,  $w_{n+1} = y$ , then various conics—ellipses and rectangular hyperbolas—in the Euclidean plane arise as loci of the points  $(x, y)$ . An analysis of these conics was made in [4] for the special cases of (1.3) which give the Fibonacci, Lucas, Pell, Fermat, and Chebyshev sequences of numbers (and also for the degenerate case when the conic breaks up).

Further developments of this theme were made by Bergum [1].

It is a natural desire to want to extend the geometrical aspect of Simson's formula (1.2) to higher dimensions. This was partly achieved in [4] for a third-order recurrence relation where a suitable analogue to Simson's formula (Waddill and Sacks [5]) was used to produce a corresponding cubic surface in three-dimensional Euclidean space. However, as this analogue had not been extended to higher-order recurrences, it was not possible to proceed to higher geometrical dimensions.

What was required was a technique, an algorithm, for determining an analogue to Simson's formula for recurrence relations of arbitrary order  $r$ .

Happily, such a method was already in existence (Hoggatt and Bicknell [2]).

After a brief, but necessary, recapitulation in the next part of this paper of the work done in [4] on the situation in three dimensions, we will proceed to employ the Hoggatt-Bicknell results [2] exclusively in the further development of our theme.

Before doing this, however, we introduce some definitions and notation.

In  $r$ -dimensional Euclidean space ( $r \geq 2$ ), a locus of points whose coordinates satisfy an equation of degree  $m$  will be called a *hypersurface* of order  $m$  with dimension  $r - 1$ . It may be represented by the symbol  $L_{r-1}^m$ .

When the equation is linear ( $m = 1$ ),  $L_{r-1}^1$  is the symbol for a *hyperplane* in  $r$  dimensions, i.e., a "flat" space of maximum dimension in the containing space.

## 2. A CUBIC SURFACE IN THREE DIMENSIONS

Consider the third-order recurrence analogue of (1.1) for the number sequence  $\{P_n\}$  defined by

$$P_{n+3} = P_{n+2} + P_{n+1} + P_n \quad (2.1)$$

with initial conditions (Waddill and Sacks [5])

$$P_0 = 0, P_1 = 1, P_2 = 1. \quad (2.2)$$

The first few numbers in this sequence are:

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccccccc} \{P_1 & P_2 & P_3 & P_4 & P_5 & P_6 & P_7 & P_8 & P_9 & P_{10} & P_{11} & \dots \\ 1 & 1 & 2 & 4 & 7 & 13 & 24 & 44 & 81 & 149 & 274 & \dots \end{array} \quad (2.3)$$

Waddill and Sacks [5] obtained a Simson formula analogue for  $\{P_n\}$  which, not unexpectedly, was of the third degree.

Putting  $P_n = x$ ,  $P_{n+1} = y$ ,  $P_{n+2} = z$  in their formula, the author [4] derived the cubic equation

$$x^3 + 2y^3 + z^3 + 2x^2y + 2xy^2 - 2yz^2 + x^2z - xz^2 - 2xyz = 1. \quad (2.4)$$

Interpreting  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  as Cartesian coordinates, we see that the points  $(x, y, z)$  lie on the cubic surface (2.4) in Euclidean space of three dimensions. For example, the point  $(1, 1, 2)$  in (2.3) lies on this  $L_2^3$  (2.4), as may be easily verified.

Sections of the cubic surface (2.4) by the coordinate planes  $L_2^1$  are the cubic curves  $L_1^3$ :

$$\begin{cases} x = 0: & 2y^3 + z^3 - 2yz^2 = 1 \\ y = 0: & x^3 + z^3 + x^2z - xz^2 = 1 \\ z = 0: & x^3 + 2y^3 + 2x^2y + 2xy^2 = 1. \end{cases} \quad (2.5)$$

A close study of these  $L_1^3$  (2.5) might give us some insight into the nature and appearance of the  $L_2^3$  (2.4), but no detailed investigation is undertaken here.

It must be clearly understood that the locus (2.4) and its other-dimensional analogues contain only the infinitude of points for which they are defined, i.e., within the context of this article these loci are not continuous. For instance, the point with coordinates  $(0, 2^{-1/3}, 0)$  lies on the  $L_2^3$  since  $(0, 2^{-1/3}, 0)$  satisfies equation (2.4), yet the triplet  $0, 2^{-1/3}, 0$  does not belong to the infinite set of numbers of the sequence  $\{P_n\}$ . Despite the lacunary nature of our geometrical loci, it is nevertheless sometimes worthwhile considering them as continuous entities [as for the sectional loci (2.5), for example].

In addition to the sequence (2.3) and the corresponding Simson formula analogue, Waddill and Sacks [5] discussed a closely related sequence for which the author [4] obtained a cubic equation almost identical to (2.4). However, this sequence is irrelevant to our purposes here and no further reference will be made to it. The true Fibonacci-type pattern which generalizes (1.1) and (1.2)' is that given in (2.3), as we shall see.

Equation (2.4) of the cubic surface in three dimensions  $L_2^3$  may also be established by a different approach using the "interesting determinant identity" of Hoggatt and Bicknell [2]. This identity, which has the structural appear-

# HYPERSURFACES ASSOCIATED WITH SIMSON FORMULA ANALOGUES

ance of an extension of (1.2)', and which relates to the sequence (2.3) with  $P_{-1} = 0$  is, in our notation,

$$\begin{vmatrix} P_{n+2} & P_{n+1} & P_n \\ P_{n+1} & P_n & P_{n-1} \\ P_n & P_{n-1} & P_{n-2} \end{vmatrix} = -1. \quad (2.6)$$

Let us now write  $P_n = x$ ,  $P_{n+1} = y$ ,  $P_{n+2} = z$ , and observe from (2.1) that

$$\begin{cases} P_{n-1} = P_{n+2} - P_{n+1} - P_n = z - x - y \\ P_{n-2} = 2P_{n+1} - P_{n+2} = 2y - z \end{cases} \quad (2.7)$$

Expanding (2.6) with the aid of (2.7), we derive

$$x^3 + 2y^3 + z^3 + 2x^2y + 2xy^2 - 2yz^2 + x^2z - xz^2 - 2xyz = 1, \quad (2.8)$$

which is identical to equation (2.4)

Thus, the same cubic surface  $L_2^3$  in three-dimensional Euclidean space is produced both from the Waddill and Sacks [5] cubic equation and from the Hoggatt and Bicknell [2] determinant identity.

## 3. HYPERSPACES IN FOUR DIMENSIONS

Next, introduce a fourth-order recurrence relation for numbers  $Q_n$  (in our notation):

$$Q_{n+4} = Q_{n+3} + Q_{n+2} + Q_{n+1} + Q_n \quad (3.1)$$

with initial conditions

$$Q_0 = 0, Q_1 = 1, Q_2 = 1, Q_3 = 2 \quad (Q_{-1} = 0, Q_{-2} = 0). \quad (3.2)$$

Then the sequence  $\{Q_n\}$  looks like this:

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccccc} Q_1 & Q_2 & Q_3 & Q_4 & Q_5 & Q_6 & Q_7 & Q_8 & Q_9 & Q_{10} & \dots \\ 1 & 1 & 2 & 4 & 8 & 15 & 29 & 56 & 108 & 208 & \dots \end{array} \quad (3.3)$$

Following the method by which (2.6) was established, Hoggatt and Bicknell [2] exhibited the neat determinantal identity

$$\begin{vmatrix} Q_{n+3} & Q_{n+2} & Q_{n+1} & Q_n \\ Q_{n+2} & Q_{n+1} & Q_n & Q_{n-1} \\ Q_{n+1} & Q_n & Q_{n-1} & Q_{n-2} \\ Q_n & Q_{n-1} & Q_{n-2} & Q_{n-3} \end{vmatrix} = (-1)^{n+1}. \quad (3.4)$$

Write  $Q_n = x$ ,  $Q_{n+1} = y$ ,  $Q_{n+2} = z$ ,  $Q_{n+3} = t$ . Observe that, from (3.1), we may deduce that

$$\begin{cases} Q_{n-1} = Q_{n+3} - Q_{n+2} - Q_{n+1} - Q_n = t - x - y - z \\ Q_{n-2} = 2Q_{n+2} - Q_{n+3} = 2z - t \\ Q_{n-3} = 2Q_{n+1} - Q_{n+2} = 2y - z. \end{cases} \quad (3.5)$$

## HYPERSURFACES ASSOCIATED WITH SIMSON FORMULA ANALOGUES

Expand (3.4) along the first row. Then, the locus of the point  $(x, y, z, t)$  in four-dimensional Euclidean space is the quartic hypersurface  $L_3^4$  (in fact, two such loci depending on the evenness or oddness of  $n$ ):

$$\begin{aligned} & \left[ \begin{aligned} & x\{x\{y(t-x-y-z)-x^2\}-y\{y(2z-t)-x(t-x-y-z)\} \\ & \quad + z\{x(2z-t)-(t-x-y-z)^2\}\} \\ & -y\{(t-x-y-z)\{y(t-x-y-z)-x^2\}-y\{y(2y-z)-x(2z-t)\} \\ & \quad + z\{x(2y-z)-(2z-t)(t-x-y-z)\}\} \\ & +z\{(t-x-y-z)\{y(2z-y)-x(t-x-y-z)\}-x\{y(2y-z)-x(2z-t)\} \\ & \quad + z\{(2y-z)(t-x-y-z)-(2z-t)^2\}\} \\ & -t\{(t-x-y-z)\{x(2z-t)-(t-x-y-z)^2\} \\ & \quad -x\{x(2y-z)-(2z-t)(t-x-y-z)\} \\ & \quad + y\{(2y-z)(t-x-y-z)-(2z-t)^2\}\} \end{aligned} \right] \\ & = (-1)^n. \end{aligned} \quad (3.6)$$

Discretion seems the better part of valor here, so we will leave the equations in this form which is useful for deducing the sectional loci in (3.7). However, the interested reader may care to expand the expressions in (3.6) still further. It certainly bears out the author's trepidation [4] about the cumbersome algebraic manipulation involved in the fourth-order recurrence case.

Before expanding along the first row, one might secure a slightly simpler form of the determinant by adding to the fourth row the sum of the first three rows. But, in all probability, perhaps no great economy of effort in exhibiting (3.6) is thereby effected.

Planar sections (quartic curves  $L_1^4$ ) of the hypersurface (3.6) by pairs of three-dimensional coordinate hyperplanes ( $L_3^1$ ) are readily obtainable, namely:

$$\begin{cases} x = 0, y = 0: & -3y^4 + 2z^3t + 2z^2t^2 - 3zt^3 + t^4 = (-1)^n \\ x = 0, z = 0: & y^4 + 3y^3t - 2yt^3 + t^4 = (-1)^n \\ x = 0, t = 0: & y^4 - 3y^3z - 7y^2z^2 - 5yz^3 - 3z^4 = (-1)^n \\ y = 0, z = 0: & -x^4 - x^3t + 3x^2t^2 - 3xt^3 + t^4 = (-1)^n \\ y = 0, t = 0: & -x^4 - 2x^3z - xz^3 - 3z^4 = (-1)^n \\ z = 0, t = 0: & -x^4 - 3x^3y - 4x^2y^2 - 2xy^3 + y^4 = (-1)^n. \end{cases} \quad (3.7)$$

Superficially, there does not appear to be anything memorable about these quartic plane curves.

One must be struck, in comparing (1.2)', (2.6), and (3.4), which relate to  $r = 2, 3$ , and  $4$ , respectively, by the fact that when  $r$  is even the value  $(\pm 1)$  of the determinant depends on the evenness or oddness of  $n$ , whereas in the case of  $r$  odd ( $= 3$ ) this is not so, the value being  $-1$  always.

These variations raise obvious questions. Is the incipient result for  $r = 2, 4$  a true pattern for  $r$  even generally? Might we reasonably expect the determinantal value for  $r = 5$  to be  $+1$ , and will the incipient pattern for  $r$  odd prove to be valid for  $r$  odd generally?

Answering these questions constitutes an interesting part of the overall problem.

## 4. HYPERSURFACES IN HIGHER DIMENSIONS

Extending the pattern of the ideas used for lower-order recurrence relations, Hoggatt and Bicknell [2] defined the sequence  $\{R_n\}$  of order  $r$  by

# HYPERSURFACES ASSOCIATED WITH SIMSON FORMULA ANALOGUES

$$R_{n+r} = R_{n+r-1} + R_{n+r-2} + \cdots + R_n \quad (4.1)$$

with initial conditions

$$R_0 = 0, R_1 = 1 \quad (4.2)$$

and

$$R_{-(r-2)} = R_{-(r-3)} = \cdots = R_{-1} = 0. \quad (4.3)$$

For these numbers  $R_n$  generated by the  $r$ -order recurrence relation (4.1), they established the determinantal identity

$$\begin{vmatrix} R_{n+r-1} & R_{n+r-2} & \cdots & R_{n+1} & R_n \\ R_{n+r-2} & R_{n+r-3} & \cdots & R_n & R_{n-1} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ R_{n+1} & R_n & \cdots & R_{n-r+3} & R_{n-r+2} \\ R_n & R_{n-1} & \cdots & R_{n-r+2} & R_{n-r+1} \end{vmatrix} = (-1)^{(r-1)n + [(r-1)/2]}, \quad (4.4)$$

which specializes to the determinantal results (1.2)', (2.6), and (3.4) already given for small values of  $r$ , namely,  $r = 2, 3$ , and  $4$ , respectively. In (4.4), the notation  $[(r-1)/2]$  refers to the greatest integer function.

[It should be noted that a small typographical aberration occurs in the power of  $(-1)$  on the right-hand side of (4.4) as given in [2].]

Putting  $R_n = x_1, R_{n+1} = x_2, R_{n+2} = x_3, \dots, R_{n+r-1} = x_r$  in (4.4), and substituting by means of (4.1)-(4.3) for elements below the reverse diagonal, we could theoretically obtain the locus of points  $(x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_r)$  in  $r$ -dimensional Euclidean space satisfying equation (4.4).

By analogy with (2.8) and (3.6), this locus is a  $L_{r-1}^r$ , a hypersurface (dimension  $r-1$ ) of order  $r$ . Sections by sets of  $r-2$  coordinate hyperplanes ("flat" hyperspaces  $L_{r-1}^1$  of dimension  $r-1$ ) from the total set

$$\{x_1 = 0, x_2 = 0, x_3 = 0, \dots, x_r = 0\}$$

of such hyperplanes give the planar curves  $L_1^r$  of order  $r$  in two dimensions corresponding to the conics ( $L_1^2$ ), cubics ( $L_1^3$ ), and quartics ( $L_1^4$ ) in the lower-dimensional cases.

For example, in six-dimensional Euclidean space ( $r = 6$ ), the section of the sextic hypersurface  $L_5^6$  by the four coordinate hyperplanes  $x_3 = 0, x_4 = 0, x_5 = 0, x_6 = 0$  is a plane sextic curve  $L_1^6$ .

A representative instance of (4.4) is, for  $r = 5, n = 7$  (say),

$$\begin{vmatrix} 464 & 236 & 120 & 61 & 31 \\ 236 & 120 & 61 & 31 & 16 \\ 120 & 61 & 31 & 16 & 8 \\ 61 & 31 & 16 & 8 & 4 \\ 31 & 16 & 8 & 4 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = +1 \quad (\text{on calculation})$$

$$= (-1)^{28+2} = (-1)^{30} \text{ in accord with (4.4).}$$

For various values of  $r$  and  $n$ , the determinantal values in (4.4), i.e.,  $+1$  or  $-1$ , may be summarized in the following table:

# HYPERSURFACES ASSOCIATED WITH SIMSON FORMULA ANALOGUES

Table 1: Determinantal Values in (4.4)

$n \backslash r$	Even		Odd	
	2,6,10,...	4,8,12,...	3,7,11,...	5,9,13,...
Odd 1,3,5,7,...	-1	+1	-1	+1
Even 2,4,6,...	+1	-1		

Or, expressed symbolically: If

$$r = 4k + 2, 4k + 3, 4k + 4, 4k + 5 \quad (k \geq 0),$$

then

$$(-1)^{(r-1)n + [(r-1)/2]} = (-1)^n, -1, (-1)^{n+1}, 1,$$

respectively.

Thus, for each odd value of  $r$ , there is just one hypersurface irrespective of the value of  $n$ , while, for each even value of  $r$ , there are two "companion" hypersurfaces which depend on the evenness or oddness of  $n$ .

Now, in [4] it was stated that, when  $r = 2$ , a hyperbola for which  $n$  is odd (even) may be transformed into its companion hyperbola occurring when  $n$  is even (odd) by a reflection in the line  $y = x$  followed by a reflection in the  $y$ -axis ( $x$ -axis).

Remembering that in two dimensions ( $r = 2$ ), a line (a  $L_1^1$ ) is a hyperplane, one may speculate whether a similar, though more complicated, system of geometrical reflections in higher even-dimensional spaces ( $r = 4, 6, \dots$ ) will produce a transformation of one hypersurface into another. Further, one wonders whether any self-transformation of a hypersurface is possible for an odd value of  $r$ .

With these reflections, we leave the geometry.

A concluding comment on nomenclature is appropriate. Numbers, and their polynomial extensions, defined in (2.1)-(2.2), (3.1)-(3.2), and (4.1)-(4.3) are sometimes referred to in the literature as Tribonacci, Quadranacci, and  $r$ -bonacci respectively. While these adjectives are suggestive and useful, they do not appeal to the author and consequently have not been utilized in this article.

## REFERENCES

1. G. E. Bergum. "Addenda to Geometry of a Generalized Simson's Formula." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 22, no. 1 (1984):22-28.
2. V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., & Marjorie Bicknell. "Generalized Fibonacci Polynomials." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 11, no. 5 (1973):457-465.
3. A. F. Horadam. "Basic Properties of a Certain Generalized Sequence of Numbers." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 3, no. 3 (1965):161-176.
4. A. F. Horadam. "Geometry of a Generalized Simson's Formula." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 20, no. 2 (1982):164-168.
5. M. E. Waddill & L. Sacks. "Another Generalized Fibonacci Sequence." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 5, no. 3 (1967):209-222.

◆◆◆◆



# DETERMINANTAL HYPERSURFACES FOR LUCAS SEQUENCES OF ORDER $r$ , AND A GENERALIZATION

A. F. HORADAM

*University of New England, Armidale, Australia 2351*

(Submitted December 1983)

## 1. INTRODUCTION

In Hoggatt and Bicknell [1], the Fibonacci sequence  $\{R_n\}$  of order  $r (\geq 2)$  was defined by

$$R_{n+r} = R_{n+r-1} + R_{n+r-2} + \cdots + R_n, \quad R_1 = 1, R_2 = 1, \quad (1.1)$$

with

$$R_{-(r-2)} = R_{-(r-3)} = \cdots = -R_1 = R_0 = 0. \quad (1.2)$$

Using the method of a generating matrix for  $\{R_n\}$ , they obtained the determinantal identity

$$\begin{vmatrix} R_{n+r-1} & R_{n+r-2} & \cdots & R_{n+1} & R_n \\ R_{n+r-2} & R_{n+r-3} & \cdots & R_n & R_{n-1} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ R_{n+1} & R_n & & R_{n-r+3} & R_{n-r+2} \\ R_n & R_{n-1} & & R_{n-r+2} & R_{n-r+1} \end{vmatrix} = (-1)^{(r-1)n + [(r-1)/2]} \quad (1.3)$$

which is an extension of the Simson formula (identity) for the simplest case  $r = 2$  for Fibonacci numbers.

Carrying these numbers  $R_n$  through to coordinate notation (writing  $x_1 = R_n$ ,  $x_2 = R_{n+1}$ ,  $x_3 = R_{n+2}$ , ...,  $x_r = R_{n+r-1}$ ), the author [4] showed that (1.3) could be interpreted as one or more hypersurfaces in Euclidean space of  $r$  dimensions (the number of hypersurface loci depending on  $n$ ). The cases  $r = 2, 3, 4$  were delineated in a little detail ([3], [4]).

It is now proposed to extend the results in [3] and [4] to the case of a Lucas sequence  $\{S_n\}$  of order  $r$ , i.e., to construct a determinant analogous to (1.3) and to interpret it geometrically as a locus in  $r$ -space.

From experience, we should expect the algebraic aspects of  $\{S_n\}$  to resemble those of  $\{R_n\}$ . Nevertheless, there are sufficient variations from the Fibonacci case to make the algebraic maneuvers, which constitute the main part of this article, a challenging and absorbing exercise.

Because of complications associated with the fact that  $S_0$  [to be defined in (2.1)] is nonzero, whereas  $R_0 = 0$ , the method used by Hoggatt and Bicknell [1] for  $\{R_n\}$  is not applied here for  $\{S_n\}$ . However, our method is applicable to  $\{R_n\}$ , as we shall see, provided we add to the definitions in [1] the injunction  $R_{-(r-1)} = 1$ .

Schematically, this paper consists of two parts. Part I is organized to secure results for the Lucas sequence which correspond to those for the Fibonacci sequence. On the basis of this knowledge, in Part II we briefly generalize the results for a sequence which contains the Fibonacci and Lucas (and other) sequences as special cases.

PART I

2. LUCAS SEQUENCE OF ORDER  $r$

Define  $\{S_n\}$ , the *Lucas sequence of order  $r$*  ( $\geq 2$ ) by

$$S_{n+r} = S_{n+r-1} + S_{n+r-2} + \cdots + S_n, \quad S_0 = 2, S_1 = 1, \quad (2.1)$$

with other initial conditions

$$\begin{cases} S_{-1} = S_{-2} = \cdots = S_{-(r-2)} = 0 \\ S_{-(r-1)} = -1. \end{cases} \quad (2.2)$$

Simplest special cases of  $\{S_n\}$  occur as follows:

$$L_{n+2} = L_{n+1} + L_n, \quad L_0 = 2, L_1 = 1, L_{-1} = -1; \quad (2.3)$$

$$M_{n+3} = M_{n+2} + M_{n+1} + M_n, \quad M_0 = 2, M_1 = 1, M_{-1} = 0, M_{-2} = -1; \quad (2.4)$$

$$N_{n+4} = N_{n+3} + N_{n+2} + N_{n+1} + N_n, \quad N_0 = 2, N_1 = 1, \\ N_{-2} = N_{-1} = 0, N_{-3} = -1. \quad (2.5)$$

The first few numbers of these sequences are:

$$\begin{pmatrix} L_0 & L_1 & L_2 & L_3 & L_4 & L_5 & L_6 & L_7 & L_8 & L_9 & L_{10} & \cdots \\ 2 & 1 & 3 & 4 & 7 & 11 & 18 & 29 & 47 & 76 & 123 & \cdots \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.3)'$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} M_0 & M_1 & M_2 & M_3 & M_4 & M_5 & M_6 & M_7 & M_8 & M_9 & M_{10} & \cdots \\ 2 & 1 & 3 & 6 & 10 & 19 & 35 & 64 & 118 & 217 & 399 & \cdots \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.4)'$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} N_0 & N_1 & N_2 & N_3 & N_4 & N_5 & N_6 & N_7 & N_8 & N_9 & N_{10} & \cdots \\ 2 & 1 & 3 & 6 & 12 & 22 & 43 & 83 & 160 & 308 & 594 & \cdots \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.5)'$$

The determinant of order  $r$  (which we may here call the *Lucas determinant of order  $r$* , corresponding to that in (1.3) for the Fibonacci sequence of order  $r$ ) is

$$\Delta_r = \begin{vmatrix} S_{n+r-1} & S_{n+r-2} & \cdots & S_{n+1} & S_n \\ S_{n+r-2} & S_{n+r-3} & \cdots & S_n & S_{n-1} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ S_{n+1} & S_n & \cdots & S_{n-r+3} & S_{n-r+2} \\ S_n & S_{n-1} & \cdots & S_{n-r+2} & S_{n-r+1} \end{vmatrix}. \quad (2.6)$$

Notice the cyclical nature of the elements in the columns of  $\Delta_r$ . Consequently, there is symmetry about the leading diagonal of  $\Delta_r$ . Both of these properties for  $\{S_n\}$  are also features of the Fibonacci sequence  $\{F_n\}$ .

Special notation: We use the symbol  $r'_i$  to mean the operation of subtracting from row  $i$  the sum of all the other rows, in a determinant of arbitrary order. An operation such as  $r'_i$  may be called a *basic operation*. Clearly,  $r'_i$  utilizes the defining recurrence (2.1) with (2.2).

# DETERMINANTAL HYPERSURFACES FOR LUCAS SEQUENCES OF ORDER $r$

It is now necessary to introduce the concept of a basic Lucas determinant.

## 3. BASIC LUCAS DETERMINANTS

Let us define the *basic Lucas determinant of order  $r$* ,  $\delta_r$ , as

$$\delta_r = \begin{vmatrix} S_{r-1} & S_{r-2} & S_{r-3} & S_{r-4} & \cdots & S_2 & S_1 & S_0 \\ S_{r-2} & S_{r-3} & S_{r-4} & & & & S_0 & 0 \\ S_{r-3} & S_{r-4} & & & & & 0 & 0 \\ S_{r-4} & & & & & & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & & & & & & \vdots & \vdots \\ S_2 & & & & & & 0 & 0 \\ S_1 & S_0 & & & & & 0 & 0 \\ S_0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & -1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}. \quad (3.1)$$

All elements in a given upward slanting line are the same, e.g., all the elements in the reverse (upward) diagonal are  $S_0 (=2)$ . Except for the element  $(= -1)$  in the bottom right-hand corner, all the elements below the reverse diagonal are zero.

Observe the cyclical nature of elements in the columns, remembering initial conditions (2.2) applying to symbols with negative suffixes.

Of course, (3.1) is only the special case of (2.6) when  $n = 0$ .

Concerning basic Lucas determinants, we now prove the following theorem (a determinantal recurrence relation).

$$\text{Theorem: } \delta_r = (-1)^{[r/2]} 2^r + (-1)^{r-1} \delta_{r-1}. \quad (3.2)$$

**Proof:** Expand  $\delta_r$  in (3.1) along the bottom row to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_r &= (-1)^{[r/2]} 2^r - \begin{vmatrix} S_{r-1} & S_{r-2} & S_{r-3} & \cdots & S_2 & S_1 \\ S_{r-2} & S_{r-3} & & & S_1 & S_0 \\ S_{r-3} & & & & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & & & & \vdots & \vdots \\ S_2 & S_1 & & & 0 & 0 \\ S_1 & S_0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \end{vmatrix} \quad (S_1 = 1, S_0 = 2) \\ &= (-1)^{[r/2]} 2^r - \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & -1 \\ S_{r-2} & S_{r-3} & S_{r-4} & & 1 & 2 \\ S_{r-3} & S_{r-4} & & & 2 & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & & \vdots & \vdots \\ S_2 & 1 & 0 & & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \end{vmatrix} \quad \text{by } r'_1 \\ &= (-1)^{[r/2]} 2^r - (-1)^{r-2} \delta_{r-1} \text{ after } r-2 \text{ cyclical row interchanges} \\ &= (-1)^{[r/2]} 2^r + (-1)^{r-1} \delta_{r-1}. \end{aligned}$$

# DETERMINANTAL HYPERSURFACES FOR LUCAS SEQUENCES OF ORDER $r$

Thus, we have, for  $r \geq 2$ ,

$$[r = 2] \quad \delta_2 = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = -2^2 - 1 = -5 = \underline{\underline{-(2^3 - 3)}} \quad (3.3)$$

$$[r = 3] \quad \delta_3 = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = -2^3 + \delta_2 = -2^3 - 2^2 - 1 = -13 = \underline{\underline{-(2^4 - 3)}} \quad (3.4)$$

$$[r = 4] \quad \delta_4 = \begin{vmatrix} 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = 2^4 - \delta_3 = 2^4 + 2^3 + 2^2 + 1 = 29 = \underline{\underline{2^5 - 3}} \quad (3.5)$$

$$[r = 5] \quad \delta_5 = \begin{vmatrix} 12 & 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = 2^5 + \delta_4 = 2^5 + 2^4 + 2^3 + 2^2 + 1 = 61 = \underline{\underline{2^6 - 3}} \quad (3.6)$$

$$[r = 6] \quad \delta_6 = \begin{vmatrix} 24 & 12 & 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 12 & 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = -2^6 - \delta_5 = -2^6 - 2^5 - 2^4 - 2^3 - 2^2 - 1 = -125 = \underline{\underline{-(2^7 - 3)}} \quad (3.7)$$

and so on.

The emerging summation pattern by which the  $\delta_r$  may be evaluated is clearly discernible. Notice that the term  $2^1$  (i.e., 2) does not occur in any  $\delta_r$  summation.

However, before establishing the value of  $\delta_r$ , we display the following tabulated information, for all possible values of  $r$ :

	$r = 4k$	$r = 4k + 1$	$r = 4k + 2$	$r = 4k + 3$
$[r/2]$	$2k$	$2k$	$2k + 1$	$2k + 1$
$(r - 1) + \left\lceil \frac{r - 1}{2} \right\rceil$	$6k - 2$	$6k$	$6k + 1$	$6k + 3$
	$\left. \begin{matrix} 2k \\ 6k - 2 \end{matrix} \right\} \text{even}$	$\left. \begin{matrix} 2k \\ 6k \end{matrix} \right\} \text{even}$	$\left. \begin{matrix} 2k + 1 \\ 6k + 1 \end{matrix} \right\} \text{odd}$	$\left. \begin{matrix} 2k + 1 \\ 6k + 3 \end{matrix} \right\} \text{odd}$

From (3.8), we deduce

$$(-1)^{[r/2]} = (-1)^{r-1 + [(r-1)/2]}. \quad (3.9)$$

Invoking this result and applying (3.2) repeatedly, we may now calculate the value of  $\delta_r$ .

**Theorem:**  $\delta_r = (-1)^{[r/2]} (2^{r+1} - 3).$  (3.10)

# DETERMINANTAL HYPERSURFACES FOR LUCAS SEQUENCES OF ORDER $r$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Proof: } \delta_r &= (-1)^{[r/2]} 2^r + (-1)^{r-1} \{ (-1)^{[(r-1)/2]} 2^{r-1} + (-1)^{r-2} \delta_{r-2} \} \quad \text{by (3.2)} \\
 &= (-1)^{[r/2]} \{ 2^r + 2^{r-1} \} - \delta_{r-2} \dots \dots \dots (\alpha) \quad \text{by (3.9)} \\
 &= (-1)^{[r/2]} \{ 2^r + 2^{r-1} \} - (-1)^{[(r-2)/2]} \{ 2^{r-2} + 2^{r-3} \} + \delta_{r-4} \quad \text{by } (\alpha) \\
 &= (-1)^{[r/2]} \{ 2^r + 2^{r-1} + 2^{r-2} + 2^{r-3} \} + \delta_{r-4} \\
 &= (-1)^{[r/2]} \{ 2^r + 2^{r-1} + 2^{r-2} + \dots + 2^3 + 2^2 + 1 \} \quad \begin{array}{l} \text{ultimately,} \\ \text{by (3.3) or} \\ \text{by (3.4)} \end{array} \\
 &= (-1)^{[r/2]} \{ 2^r + 2^{r-1} + 2^{r-2} + \dots + 2^3 + 2^2 + 2 + 1 - 2 \} \\
 &= (-1)^{[r/2]} \left\{ \frac{2(1 - 2^r)}{1 - 2} - 1 \right\} \quad \text{summing the finite geometric progression} \\
 &= (-1)^{[r/2]} (2^{r+1} - 3).
 \end{aligned}$$

Checking back shows that the special cases of  $\delta_r$  listed in (3.3)-(3.7) have values in accord with (3.10), as expected.

## 4. EVALUATION OF LUCAS DETERMINANTS

Next, we show that [cf. (2.6), (3.1)]

$$\Delta_r = \pm \delta_r.$$

To illustrate the ideas involved in the proof we shall give for this connection between  $\Delta_r$  and  $\delta_r$ , suppose we take  $r = 5$ ,  $n = 3$ , i.e.,  $r$  is *odd*. This implies that we are dealing with the integer sequence

$$\begin{pmatrix} S_{-4} & S_{-3} & S_{-2} & S_{-1} & S_0 & S_1 & S_2 & S_3 & S_4 & S_5 & S_6 & S_7 & S_8 & \dots \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 2 & 1 & 3 & 6 & 12 & 24 & 46 & 91 & 179 & \dots \end{pmatrix} \quad (4.1)$$

Perform the basic operations  $r'_1$ ,  $r'_2$ ,  $r'_3$  successively on the determinant  $\Delta_5$  when  $n = 3$  to derive:

$$\underbrace{\begin{vmatrix} 91 & 46 & 24 & 12 & 6 \\ 46 & 24 & 12 & 6 & 3 \\ 24 & 12 & 6 & 3 & 1 \\ 12 & 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}_{\Delta_5} = \underbrace{\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 12 & 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 & 0 \end{vmatrix}}_{\delta_5^*} = \underbrace{\begin{vmatrix} 12 & 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{vmatrix}}_{\delta_5} \quad \begin{array}{l} [= 61, \\ \text{see (3.6)}] \end{array} \quad (4.2)$$

In  $\Delta_5$ , the leading term 91 ( $= S_7$ ) is reduced to the leading term 12 ( $= S_4$ ) in  $\delta_5$  by the  $7 - 4 = 3$  ( $= n$ ) basic operations specified. Because of the cyclical nature of  $\Delta_5$ , these basic operations act to produce a determinant  $\delta_5^* = \Delta_5$  whose rows are the permutation

$$\begin{bmatrix} 12 & 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 & 12 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

of the rows of  $\delta_5$ . Due to the fact that  $r$  is odd, this cyclic permutation is even. Expressed otherwise,  $\delta_5^*$  is transformed to  $\delta_5$  by an even number of row interchanges, so the sign associated with  $\delta_5$  is +, i.e.,  $\delta_5^* = \delta_5$ . Hence,  $\Delta_5 = \delta_5$ .

# DETERMINANTAL HYPERSURFACES FOR LUCAS SEQUENCES OF ORDER $r$

If  $n > 5$ , the cyclic process of basic operations is continued until the basic determinant  $\delta_5$  is reached. Obviously, the actual value of  $n$  is irrelevant.

The reasoning inherent in the case  $r = 5$  applies equally well to the case when  $r$  is arbitrarily odd. Consequently, for  $r$  odd,  $\Delta_r = \delta_r$  always.

If  $r$  is even, the situation is a little more complicated.

For illustrative purposes, let us examine the case  $r = 4$ . Substituting the numbers in (2.5)' into (2.6) when  $n = 3, 4, 5, 6$  in turn, we readily calculate that  $\Delta_4$  is reduced to the four  $\delta_4^*$  whose rows are respectively the permutations

$$\begin{bmatrix} 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 & 6 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 6 & 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 & 6 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

of the rows of  $\delta_4$  (and this is true here for  $n = 4k - 1, 4k, 4k + 1, 4k + 2$ , respectively ( $k = 1, 2, \dots$ )).

As these permutations are successively odd, even, odd, even, it follows that  $\delta_4^* = -\delta_4, \delta_4, -\delta_4, \delta_4$  in turn. Thus,  $\Delta_4 = \pm\delta_4$ , depending on  $n$ , namely,  $\Delta_4 = \delta_4$  when  $n$  is even, while  $\Delta_4 = -\delta_4$  when  $n$  is odd.

Armed with this knowledge, we can now attack the general problem, i.e., when  $r$  and  $n$  are arbitrary integers.

First, we establish the following result:

**Theorem:**  $\Delta_r = (-1)^m \delta_r$ , where  $m = n'(r - n')$ ,  $n' \equiv n \pmod{r}$ . (4.3)

**Proof:** In (2.6), the leading term  $S_{n+r-1}$  in  $\Delta_r$  is diminished to the leading term  $S_r$  in  $\delta_r$  by  $n + r - 1 - (r - 1) = n$  basic operations  $r'_1, r'_2, \dots, r'_n$  which produce the determinant  $\delta_r^*$ . Simultaneously,  $S_{r-1}$  drops  $n$  places in the first column of  $\delta_r^*$ .

To restore the cyclical order in the first column of  $\delta_r^*$  to the basic cyclical order of the first column in  $\delta_r$ , beginning with  $S_{r-1}$ , it is necessary to effect  $n(r - n)$  interchanges of sign to account for the  $r - n$  terms below and including  $S_{r-1}$ , and the  $n$  terms above  $S_{r-1}$ .

When  $n > r$ , we reduce  $n \pmod{r}$ .

Each interchange accounts for a change of sign in the value of the determinant.

When  $r$  is odd, the product  $n(r - n)$  is always even, no matter what the value of  $n$  is.

But when  $r$  is even, the product  $n(r - n)$  is odd if  $n$  is odd, and even when  $n$  is even. [That is, when  $r$  is a given odd number there is only one value of  $\Delta_r$ , whereas for a given even  $r$  there are two values of  $\Delta_r$  depending on the value of  $n$ .]

Thus,

$$\Delta_r = (-1)^m \delta_r, \text{ where } m = n'(r - n'), n' \equiv n \pmod{r}.$$

Combining (3.10) and (4.3), we have the following theorem as an immediate deduction.

**Theorem:**  $\Delta_r = (-1)^{m+[r/2]}(2^{r+1} - 3)$ , where  $m = n'(r - n')$ ,  $n' \equiv n \pmod{r}$ . (4.4)

For example,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{when } r = 5, n = 3: \quad \Delta_4 &= (-1)^{3 \times 2 + 2} (2^6 - 3) && \text{from (4.4)} \\ &= +61 \end{aligned}$$

## DETERMINANTAL HYPERSURFACES FOR LUCAS SEQUENCES OF ORDER $r$

in conformity with (4.2) and (3.6).

On the other hand,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{when } r = 5, n = 4: \quad \Delta_4 &= (-1)^{1 \times 3 + 2} (2^5 - 3) && \text{from (4.4)} \\ &= -29 \end{aligned}$$

as we have seen in the discussion preceding (4.3).

Applying (4.4) to a random choice  $r = 6$ ,  $n = 8$  (but not so random that the computations are unmanageable!), we discover on substitution that

$$\Delta_6 = (-1)^{2 \times 4 + 3} (2^7 - 3) = -125,$$

as may be verified by direct calculation.

Our result (4.4) for a Lucas sequence of order  $r$  should be compared with the Hoggatt-Bicknell result (1.3) for the corresponding Fibonacci case.

### 5. HYPERSURFACES FOR THE LUCAS SEQUENCES

Geometrical interpretations can now be given to the identity (4.4) and its specializations for small values of  $r$ . The reader is referred to [3] and [4] for details of the geometry relating to Simson-type identities for Fibonacci sequences of order  $r$ .

As this corresponding work for Simson-type identities for Lucas sequences of order  $r$  parallels the results in [3] and [4], we will content ourselves here with a fairly brief statement of the main ideas.

Write  $x_1 = S_n$ ,  $x_2 = S_{n+1}$ , ...,  $x_r = S_{n+r-1}$ . Represent a point in  $r$ -dimensional Euclidean space by Cartesian coordinates  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_r)$ .

Then, we interpret (4.4) as the equation of a locus of points in  $r$ -space which has maximum dimension  $r - 1$  in the containing space. Such a locus is called a *hypersurface*.

Each of the loci given by the simple linear equations  $x_1 = 0$ ,  $x_2 = 0$ , ...,  $x_r = 0$  is a "flat" (linear) space of dimension  $r - 1$ , and is called a (coordinate) *hyperplane*.

Hypersurfaces of the simplest kind occur for small values of  $r$ . In accord with our theory, there will be one hypersurface when  $r$  is odd, and two when  $r$  is even.

Examples of hypersurfaces for  $\{S_n\}$  are:

$$r = 2 \text{ (conic): } x_1^2 + x_1x_2 - x_2^2 = 5(-1)^n \quad (5.1)$$

$$\begin{aligned} r = 3 \text{ (cubic surface): } x_1^3 + 2x_2^2 + x_3^2 + 2x_1^2x_2 + 2x_1x_2^2 - 2x_2x_3^2 \\ + x_1^2x_3 - x_1x_3^2 - 2x_1x_2x_3 = -13. \end{aligned} \quad (5.2)$$

In passing, we note that (5.1) expresses the well-known Simson-type identity for Lucas sequences of order 2, namely,

$$L_{n+1}L_{n-1} - L_n^2 = 5(-1)^{n+1}. \quad (5.1)'$$

Moreover, the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix},$$

whose determinant  $\delta_2$  is associated with identity (5.1)', has several interesting

## DETERMINANTAL HYPERSURFACES FOR LUCAS SEQUENCES OF ORDER $r$

geometrical interpretations (relating to: angle-bisection, reflection, vector mapping). (See Hoggatt and Ruggles [2].)

Observe that if we replace  $x_1, x_2, x_3$  by  $x, y, z$ , respectively, in (5.1) and (5.2), we obtain equations whose forms, except for the numbers on the right-hand sides, are identical to those given in [3] and [4]. However, this formal structure camouflages the fact that the corresponding equations of the conics and cubic surfaces, for Fibonacci and Lucas sequences, are satisfied by different sets of numbers.

Carrying further our comparison with the results for Lucas and Fibonacci sequences, we obtain, in the case  $r = 4$ , a nasty equation (refer to [4]) for a quartic hypersurface in four-dimensional Euclidean space. And so on for hypersurfaces in higher dimensions.

Sections of these loci by coordinate hyperplanes yield plane curves of various orders (cubics, quartics, quintics, sextics, and, generally, curves of order  $r$ ). Refer here also to [4].

This completes our summarized outline of the geometrical consequences of the determinantal identity (4.4) for Lucas sequences paralleling those for the Fibonacci sequences.

With the notions of Part I in mind, we are in a position to examine closely a more general sequence of order  $r$  which has the Fibonacci and Lucas sequences of order  $r$  as special cases.

## PART II

Only a brief outline of the ensuing generalization, which parallels the information in Part I, will be given.

### 6. A GENERALIZED SEQUENCE OF ORDER $r$

Let us now introduce the generalized sequence  $\{H_n\}$  defined by the recurrence relation

$$H_{n+r} = H_{n+r-1} + H_{n+r-2} + \cdots + H_n, \quad H_0 = a, H_1 = b, \quad (6.1)$$

with further initial conditions

$$\begin{cases} H_{-1} = H_{-2} = \cdots = H_{-(r-2)} = 0 \\ H_{-(r-1)} = b - a. \end{cases} \quad (6.2)$$

Interested readers might wish to write out the first few terms of these sequences for different values of  $r$ . For example,  $H$  takes on, in turn, the values  $5a + 8b$ ,  $11a + 13b$ ,  $14a + 15b$ ,  $15a + 16b$ , and  $16a + 16b$  for successive values  $r = 2, 3, 4, 5$ , and  $6$ .

As in (2.6), the *generalized determinant of order  $r$*  is defined to be

$$D_r = \begin{vmatrix} H_{n+r-1} & H_{n+r-2} & \cdots & H_{n+1} & H_n \\ H_{n+r-2} & H_{n+r-3} & \cdots & H_n & H_{n-1} \\ \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\ H_{n+1} & H_n & \cdots & H_{n-r+3} & H_{n-r+2} \\ H_n & H_{n-1} & \cdots & H_{n-r+2} & H_{n-r+1} \end{vmatrix} \quad (6.3)$$



# DETERMINANTAL HYPERSURFACES FOR LUCAS SEQUENCES OF ORDER $r$

Evaluation of  $D_r$  is the object of Part II.

Define, as in (3.1), the *basic generalized determinant of order  $r$* ,  $d_r$ , to be obtained from (6.3) when  $n = 0$ . That is,

$$d_r = (D_r)_{n=0}. \quad (6.4)$$

Then, the following simplest basic generalized determinants may be readily calculated by expanding along the bottom row:

$$[r = 2] \quad d_2 = -a^2 + (b - a)b \quad (6.5)$$

$$[r = 3] \quad d_3 = -a^3 - (b - a)d_2 = -a^3 + (b - a)a^2 - (b - a)^2b \quad (6.6)$$

$$[r = 4] \quad d_4 = a^4 + (b - a)d_3 \\ = a^4 - (b - a)a^3 + (b - a)^2b^2 - (b - a)^3b \quad (6.7)$$

$$[r = 5] \quad d_5 = a^5 - (b - a)d_4 \\ = a^5 - (b - a)a^4 + (b - a)^2b^3 - (b - a)^3a^2 + (b - a)^4b \quad (6.8)$$

$$[r = 6] \quad d_6 = -a^6 + (b - a)d_5 \\ = -a^6 + (b - a)a^5 - (b - a)^2a^4 + (b - a)^3a^3 \\ - (b - a)^4a^2 + (b - a)^5b \quad (6.9)$$

and so on.

A developing pattern is clearly discernible.

Calculation of  $d_r$  follows the method employed in (3.2).

Although only an outline of the theory in Part II is being offered, it is generally desirable for clarity of exposition to exhibit the main points of the calculation of  $d_r$  in a little detail, even at the risk of some possibly superfluous documentation.

$$\text{Theorem: } d_r = (-1)^{[r/2]} \{a^{r+1} + (-1)^{r-1}(a + b)(b - a)^r\}/b. \quad (6.10)$$

**Proof:** Expand  $d_r$  in (6.3) and (6.4) along the last row to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} d_r &= (-1)^{[r/2]} a^r - (b - a)(-1)^{r-1} d_{r-1} \dots \dots \dots (i) \\ &= (-1)^{[r/2]} \{a^r - (b - a)a^{r-1}\} - (b - a)^2 d_{r-2} \quad \text{by (i), (3.9)} \\ &= (-1)^{[r/2]} \{a^r - (b - a)a^{r-1} + (b - a)^2 a^{r-2} - (b - a)^3 a^{r-3} + \dots \\ &\quad + (-1)^{r-2} (b - a)^{r-2} a^2 + (-1)^{r-1} (b - a)^{r-1} b \\ &\quad + [(-1)^{r-1} (b - a)^{r-1} a - (-1)^{r-1} (b - a)^{r-1} a]\} \\ &= (-1)^{[r/2]} \{a^r (1 - (b - a)a^{-1} + (b - a)^2 a^{-2} - (b - a)^3 a^{-3} + \dots \\ &\quad + (-1)^r (b - a)^{r-2} a^{-(r-2)} + (-1)^{r-1} (b - a)^{r-1} a^{-(r-1)}) \\ &\quad + (-1)^{r-1} (b - a)^r\} \\ &= (-1)^{[r/2]} \left\{ a^r \frac{[1 - (-(b - a)a^{-1})^r]}{1 - (-(b - a)a^{-1})} + (-1)^{r-1} (b - a)^r \right\} \\ &\quad - (-1)^{[r/2]} \{a^{r+1} + (-1)^{r-1} (a + b)(b - a)^r\}/b. \end{aligned}$$

Repeated use of (i) has been made in the proof. Also, the summation formula for a finite geometric progression has been invoked.

# DETERMINANTAL HYPERSURFACES FOR LUCAS SEQUENCES OF ORDER $r$

Applying next the arguments used in the evaluation of the Lucas determinant or order  $r$ ,  $\Delta_r$ , we easily have

$$\text{Theorem: } D_r = (-1)^m d_r = (-1)^{m+[r/2]} \{a^{r+1} + (-1)^{r-1}(\alpha + b)(b - \alpha)^r\}/b, \quad (6.11)$$

$$\text{where } \begin{cases} m = n'(r - n') \\ n' \equiv n \pmod{r}. \end{cases}$$

**Proof:** As for (4.3).

For the Lucas sequence of order  $r$ ,  $\{S_n\}$ ,

$$a = 2, b = 1 \quad (\text{so } a + b = 3, b - a = -1).$$

It is easy to verify that, in this case,

$$d_r = \delta_r, \quad D_r = \Delta_r.$$

[Cf. (3.10), (4.4).]

Coming now to the case of the Fibonacci sequence of order  $r$ ,  $\{R_n\}$ , we have

$$a = 0, b = 1 \quad (\text{so } a + b = 1, b - a = 1).$$

It is important to note that, for our theory to be used for  $\{R_n\}$ , the terms of  $\{R_n\}$  with negative suffixes have to be extended by one term in the definition (1.1), (1.2) given by Hoggatt and Bicknell [1], namely,

$$R_{-(r-1)} = 1. \quad (6.12)$$

Augmenting  $\{R_n\}$  by this single element enables us to construct *basic Fibonacci determinants* of order  $r$ ,  $\nabla_r$ , for  $\{R_n\}$  derived from (1.3) analogously to those for  $\{S_n\}$  from (2.6). Computation yields

$$\nabla_2 = 1, \nabla_3 = -1, \nabla_4 = -1, \nabla_5 = 1, \nabla_6 = 1.$$

To give some appreciation of the appearance of the  $\nabla_r$ , choose  $r = 6$ , so

$$\nabla_6 = \begin{vmatrix} 8 & 4 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 4 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \quad (= 1) \quad (6.13)$$

which is rather simpler than the corresponding form (3.7) for  $\delta_6$ .

Putting  $a = 0, b = 1$  in (6.10), we have, with the aid of (3.9)

$$d_r = (-1)^{[r/2]+r-1} = (-1)^{[(r-1)/2]} = \nabla_r.$$

Now it may be shown that  $m + [(r-1)/2]$ , the power of  $-1$  in (6.11), and  $(r-1)n + [(r-1)/2]$ , the corrected power of  $-1$  in the Hoggatt-Bicknell [1] evaluation in (1.3), are both even or both odd. That is

$$(-1)^{m+[r/2]} = (-1)^{(r-1)n+[(r-1)/2]}. \quad (6.14)$$

# DETERMINANTAL HYPERSURFACES FOR LUCAS SEQUENCES OF ORDER $r$

Thus,  $a = 0$ ,  $b = 1$  in (6.11) with (3.9) give

$$D_r = (-1)^{m+[(r-1)/2]} = (-1)^{(r-1)n+[(r-1)/2]} = \nabla_r,$$

where  $\nabla_r$  is the symbol to represent the Hoggatt-Bicknell determinant (1.3).

Suppose we check for  $\{R_n\}$  when  $r = 6$ ,  $n = 3$ , i.e., we are dealing with the sequence

$$\begin{pmatrix} R_{-5} & R_{-4} & R_{-3} & R_{-2} & R_{-1} & R_0 & R_1 & R_2 & R_3 & R_4 & R_5 & R_6 & R_7 & R_8 & \dots \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 & 4 & 8 & 16 & 32 & 63 & \dots \end{pmatrix} \quad (6.15)$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} (n = 3): \quad D_6 &= (-1)^{3 \times 3 + 2} = -1 && \text{by (6.11), (3.9)} \\ &= (-1)^{5 \times 3 + 2} = -1 && \text{by (1.3)} \\ &= -\nabla_6 = -1 && \text{on direct calculation.} \end{aligned}$$

Geometrical considerations similar to those in [4] and in Part I of this article are now applicable to the general case of  $\{H_n\}$  when  $a$  and  $b$  are unspecified, and also to the multifarious special cases of  $\{H_n\}$  occurring when  $a$  and  $b$  are given particular values.

But we do not proceed *ad infinitum*, *ad nauseam* by discussing other classes of sequences. Unsatiated readers, if such there be, may indulge to surfeit in such an algebraic geometry orgy.

One further generalization might be contemplated if, in (6.1), we were to associate with each  $H_{n+r-j}$  ( $j = 1, 2, \dots, r$ ) a nonzero, nonunity factor  $p_j$ . However, the algebra involved makes this a daunting prospect.

## REFERENCES\*

1. V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., & Marjorie Bicknell. "Generalized Fibonacci Polynomials." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 11, no. 5 (1973):457-465.
2. V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., & I. D. Ruggles. "A Primer for the Fibonacci Numbers—Part V." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 1, no. 4 (1963):65-71.
3. A. F. Horadam. "Geometry of a Generalized Simson's Formula." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 20, no. 2 (1982):164-168.
4. A. F. Horadam. "Hypersurfaces Associated with Simson Formula Analogues." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 24, no. 3 (1986):221-226.
5. T. G. Room. *The Geometry of Determinantal Loci*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1938.

---

\*To the list of references, we take the liberty of adding the monumental text [5] by Room, though its subject is determinantal loci in projective, not Euclidean, spaces.

◆◆◆◆

# ON THE OCCURRENCES OF FIBONACCI SEQUENCES IN THE COUNTING OF MATCHINGS IN LINEAR POLYGONAL CHAINS

E. J. FARRELL

The University of the West Indies, St. Augustine, Trinidad  
(Submitted January 1984)

## 1. INTRODUCTION

The graphs considered here will be finite and will have no multiple edges. Let  $G$  be such a graph. A *matching* in  $G$  is a spanning subgraph whose components are nodes and edges only. We define a  $k$ -*matching* in  $G$  to be a matching with  $k$  edges. When the matching consists of edges only, it will be called a *perfect matching*. The number of perfect matchings in  $G$  will be denoted by  $\gamma(G)$ . The total number of matchings in  $G$  will be denoted by  $\tau(G)$ .

The following example illustrates the above definitions.

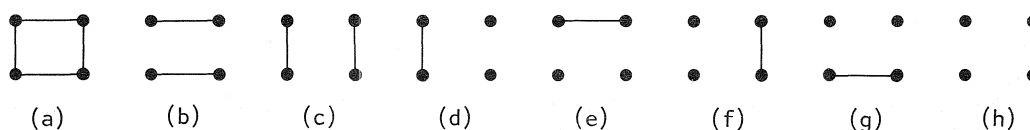


Figure 1

The graph  $G$  shown in Figure 1(a) has two perfect matchings [graphs (b) and (c)]. Therefore  $\gamma(G) = 2$ .  $G$  has four 1-matchings [graphs (d), (e), (f), and (g)] and one 0-matching [graph (h)]. Hence  $G$  has 7 matchings; i.e.,  $\tau(G) = 7$ .

By a *polygonal chain*  $P_{k,n}$ , we will mean the graph obtained by concatenating  $n$   $k$ -gons in such a manner that adjacent  $k$ -gons (*cells*) have exactly one edge in common. Also, for  $k > 3$ , no three cells have a common node.

If the first and last cells (cells which are adjacent to exactly one other cell) of  $P_{k,n}$  are joined together, so that they have exactly one edge in common, the "circular" structure obtained will be called a *long polygonal chain*  $C_{k,n}$ .  $n$  is called the *length* of the chain. Notice that in  $C_{k,n}$ , every cell will be adjacent to exactly two cells.

It is clear that different polygonal chains will result, according to the manner in which the cells are concatenated. For example, in the following diagram we show four nonisomorphic versions of  $P_{5,4}$ .

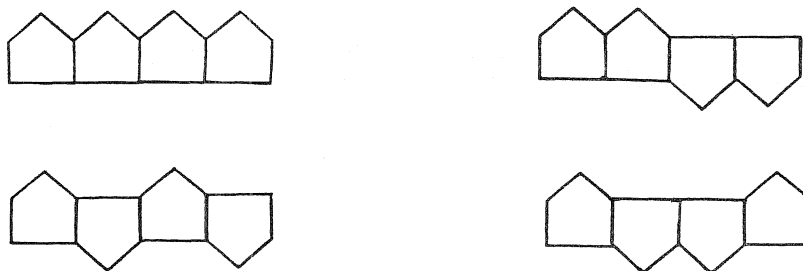


Figure 2

## FIBONACCI SEQUENCES AND MATCHINGS

Notice, however, that when  $k = 4$  there is only one polygonal chain,  $P_{4,n}$ . We can also define  $P_{4,n}$  as the graph obtained by joining the corresponding nodes of two equal paths with  $n$  nodes. We refer to one path as the *upper path* and the other as the *lower path*. The edges in the upper path will be called *upper edges* and those in the lower path will be called *lower edges*.

We define the *linear polygonal chain*  $S_{k,n}$  ( $k > 3$ ) to be the graph obtained from  $P_{4,n}$  as follows. If  $k$  is even, then every upper and lower edge is replaced by a path of length  $(k - 2)/2$ . If  $k$  is odd, then every upper edge is replaced by a path of length  $(k - 1)/2$ , and every lower edge is replaced by a path of length  $(k - 3)/2$ . For  $n$ -even,  $S_{3,n}$  is obtained from  $P_{4,(n/2)}$  by joining diagonally opposite nodes in a consistent direction. For  $n$ -odd,  $S_{3,n}$  is obtained from  $S_{3,n+1}$  by removing a node of valency 2. The *long linear polygonal chain*  $L_{k,n}$  is analogously obtained from  $S_{k,n}$ , as  $C_{k,n}$  is obtained from  $P_{k,n}$ .

Linear polygonal chains have been the subject of numerous investigations. Their matching polynomials were extensively investigated (see [1, 2, 3, 4, 5]). Polygonal chains have also been called animals, and are special cases of the general animal defined in Harary and Palmer [7]. During investigations of the matching polynomials of linear polygonal chains, it was observed that the number of perfect matchings, and in some cases the total number of matchings, were Fibonacci numbers. These observations form the basis for this report. We refer the reader to Harary [6] for the basic definitions in Graph Theory.

### 2. PRELIMINARY RESULTS

Let  $G$  be a graph and  $xy$  an edge in  $G$  joining nodes  $x$  and  $y$ . We can partition the perfect matchings in  $G$  into two classes: (i) those containing  $xy$  and (ii) those not containing  $xy$ . The perfect matchings in class (i) will be perfect matchings in the graph  $G''$  obtained from  $G$  by removing nodes  $x$  and  $y$ . Those in class (ii) will be perfect matchings in  $G'$ , the graph obtained from  $G$  by deleting the edge  $xy$ . Thus we have the following lemma.

**Lemma 1:**  $\gamma(G) = \gamma(G') + \gamma(G'')$ .

Suppose that  $G$  consists of two components  $H$  and  $K$ . Then any perfect matchings in  $H$  and  $K$  can be combined to yield a perfect matching in  $G$ . Conversely, every perfect matching in  $G$  can be broken up into a perfect matching in  $H$  and a perfect matching in  $K$ . Hence we have the following result which generalizes the argument.

**Lemma 2:** Let  $G$  be a graph consisting of  $r$  components  $H_1, H_2, \dots, H_r$ . Then

$$\gamma(G) = \prod_{i=1}^r \gamma(H_i).$$

It is clear that if  $G$  is a connected graph with an odd number of nodes, then  $G$  cannot have a perfect matching.

**Lemma 3:** Let  $G$  be a graph. If  $G$  has an odd number of nodes, then

$$\gamma(G) = 0.$$

Lemma 1 can be very useful for detecting the polygonal chains  $G$  for which  $\gamma(G)$  is a Fibonacci number. We simply investigate the relations between  $\gamma(G')$  and  $\gamma(G'')$  and the chains of shorter lengths. Lemma 2 is useful when applying

## FIBONACCI SEQUENCES AND MATCHINGS

Lemma 1, since the deletion of an edge from  $G$  might yield a disconnected graph. Lemma 3 is useful for reducing the number of graphs to be considered in applications of Lemma 1.

We can use an argument similar to the one preceding Lemmas 1 and 2 to establish the following analogous results.

Lemma 4:  $\tau(G) = \tau(G') + \tau(G'')$ .

Lemma 5: If  $G$  consists of  $r$  components  $H_1, H_2, \dots, H_r$ , then

$$\tau(G) = \prod_{i=1}^r \tau(H_i).$$

Lemmas 1 and 4 yield algorithms for counting perfect matchings and total number of matchings, respectively, in graphs. The algorithms consist of repeated applications of the lemmas until graphs  $H_i$  are obtained for which  $\gamma(H_i)$  and  $\tau(H_i)$ , respectively, can be written down. These algorithms will be referred to as *reduction processes*. When applying a reduction process, the graph  $G'$  will be referred to as the *edge-deleted graph*.  $G''$  will be referred to as the *node-deleted graph*.

### 3. THE TRIVIAL CHAINS $S_{1,n}$ AND $L_{1,n}$

We define  $P_{1,n}$  to be a tree with nodes of valencies 1 and 2 only. This graph is also called the path or chain  $P_n$ . When the end-nodes of  $P_n$  are identified, the resulting graph  $C_{1,n}$  is called the cycle or  $n$ -gon  $C_n$ .

Let us apply Lemma 4 to the chain  $P_n$  by deleting an edge incident to a node of valency 1. Then  $G'$  will contain two components,  $P_{n-1}$  and an isolated node  $P_1$ . Therefore,

$$\tau(G') = \tau(P_{n-1}) \cdot \tau(P_1) = \tau(P_{n-1}).$$

$G''$  will be the graph  $P_{n-2}$ . Therefore,

$$\tau(G'') = \tau(P_{n-2}).$$

Hence, from Lemma 4, we get

$$\tau(P_n) = \tau(P_{n-1}) + \tau(P_{n-2}).$$

It is clear that  $\tau(P_1) = 1$  and  $\tau(P_2) = 2$ . We define  $\tau(P_0) = 1$ . Hence we have the following theorem.

**Theorem 1:** The total number of matchings in the chains  $P_n$  form a Fibonacci sequence with initial values  $\tau(P_0) = \tau(P_1) = 1$ .

Let us apply Lemma 4 to the long chain  $C_n$ . In this case,  $G'$  will be the graph  $P_n$  and  $G''$  will be  $P_{n-2}$ . Hence we have

$$\tau(C_n) = \tau(P_n) + \tau(P_{n-2}).$$

Therefore,

$$\tau(C_{n-1}) + \tau(C_{n-2}) = \tau(P_{n-1}) + \tau(P_{n-3}) + \tau(P_{n-2}) + \tau(P_{n-4})$$

# FIBONACCI SEQUENCES AND MATCHINGS

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= [\tau(P_{n-1}) + \tau(P_{n-2})] + [\tau(P_{n-3}) + \tau(P_{n-4})] \\
 &= \tau(P_n) + \tau(P_{n-2}) = \tau(C_n).
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence we have the following theorem.

**Theorem 2:** The total number of matchings in the cycles  $C_n$  ( $n > 2$ ) form a Fibonacci sequence with initial values  $\tau(C_3) = 4$  and  $\tau(C_4) = 7$ .

## 4. TRIANGULAR CHAINS

For brevity of notation, we will denote the linear triangular chain  $S_{3,n}$  by  $T_n$ . The long triangular chain  $L_{3,n}$  ( $n$ -even) will be denoted by  $L_n$ . The graphs  $T_n$  and  $L_{3,12}$  are shown below in Figures 3(a) and 3(b), respectively.

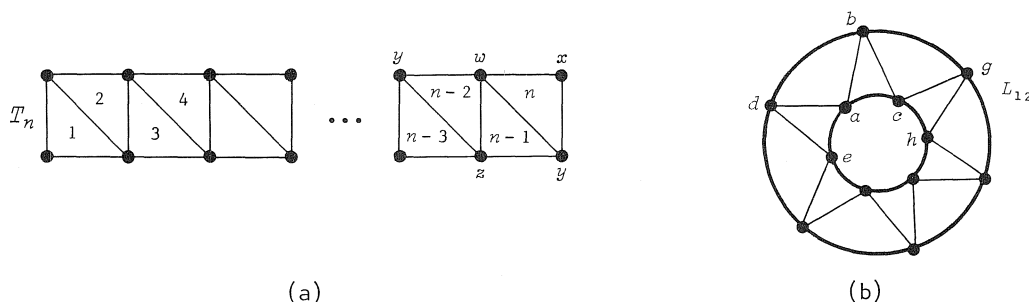


Figure 3

It can be verified that  $T_n$  contains  $n + 2$  nodes and  $2n + 1$  edges. Also  $L_n$  contains  $n$  nodes and  $2n$  edges. Therefore, for odd  $n$ ,  $T_n$  and  $L_n$  do not have perfect matchings.

Let us apply the reduction process for perfect matchings to the graph  $T_n$  ( $n$ -even) by deleting the edge  $xy$  [see Figure 3(a)].  $G'$  will be  $T_{n-1}$  with the edge  $wx$  attached to it;  $G''$  will be  $T_{n-2}$ . Now, any perfect matching in  $G'$  must contain the edge  $wx$  since the node  $x$  will have valency 1. It follows that the edge  $zy$  must also be in every perfect matching of  $G'$ . The rest of the perfect matching will be a perfect matching of  $T_{n-4}$ . Hence we get

$$\gamma(G') = \gamma(T_{n-4}).$$

Also,

$$\gamma(G'') = \gamma(T_{n-2}).$$

Therefore, from Lemma 1, we get

$$\gamma(T_n) = \gamma(T_{n-2}) + \gamma(T_{n-4}). \quad (1)$$

It can be confirmed that  $\gamma(T_2) = 2$  and  $\gamma(T_4) = 3$ . We define  $\tau(T_0)$  to be 1. Hence we have the following theorem.

**Theorem 3:** The number of perfect matchings in the triangular chains  $T_n$  ( $n$ -even) form a Fibonacci sequence with boundary values  $\gamma(T_0) = 1$  and  $\gamma(T_2) = 2$ .

Let us apply the reduction process for perfect matchings to the graph  $L_n$  by deleting the edge  $bg$  [see Figure 3(b)].  $G'$  will be  $L_n$  with edge  $bg$  removed.

## FIBONACCI SEQUENCES AND MATCHINGS

$G''$  will be  $L_n$  with nodes  $b$  and  $g$  removed. Let us now apply the reduction process to  $G'$  by deleting edge  $bc$ . Let  $G'_2$  be the edge-deleted graph. The graph  $G''_2$  obtained by deleting nodes  $b$  and  $c$  will be  $T_{n-4}$ .

$$\gamma(G''_2) = \gamma(T_{n-4}).$$

Apply the reduction process to  $G'_2$  by deleting edge  $ac$ . The edge-deleted graph will be  $T_{n-2}$ . The node-deleted graph will be  $T_{n-5}$  with an edge attached to a node of valency 2. Therefore,

$$\gamma(G'_2) = \gamma(T_{n-2}) + \gamma(T_{n-6}).$$

Consider now the graph  $G''$ . We can apply the reduction process by deleting edge  $ac$ . The edge-deleted graph  $G'_3$  will be  $T_{n-5}$  with an edge attached to a node of valency 2. Therefore,

$$\gamma(G'_3) = \gamma(T_{n-6}).$$

The node-deleted graph will be  $T_{n-6}$ . Therefore, we get

$$\gamma(G'') = 2\gamma(T_{n-6}).$$

Hence, by adding the contributions of the final graphs, we obtain the following lemma.

**Lemma 6:**  $\gamma(L_n) = \gamma(T_{n-2}) + \gamma(T_{n-4}) + 3\gamma(T_{n-6})$  ( $n$ -even and  $n > 4$ ), with

$$\gamma(T_0) = 1, \gamma(T_2) = 2, \text{ and } \gamma(T_4) = 3.$$

The above lemma yields:

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma(L_{n-2}) + \gamma(L_{n-4}) &= \gamma(T_{n-4}) + \gamma(T_{n-6}) + 3\gamma(T_{n-8}) + \gamma(T_{n-6}) \\ &\quad + \gamma(T_{n-8}) + 3\gamma(T_{n-10}) \\ &= [\gamma(T_{n-4}) + \gamma(T_{n-6})] + [\gamma(T_{n-6}) + \gamma(T_{n-8})] \\ &\quad + 3[\gamma(T_{n-8}) + \gamma(T_{n-10})] \\ &= \gamma(T_{n-2}) + \gamma(T_{n-4}) + 3\gamma(T_{n-6}), \text{ using Equation (1)} \\ &= \gamma(L_n), \text{ from Lemma 6.} \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we obtain the following result.

**Theorem 4:** The number of perfect matchings in the long triangular chains  $L_n$  ( $n$ -even) form a Fibonacci sequence with initial values  $\gamma(L_0) = 4$  (by convention),  $\gamma(L_2) = 2$ , and  $\gamma(L_4) = 6$ .

### 5. CHAINS OF HIGHER ORDERS

We will denote by  $G - S$  the graph obtained from a graph  $G$  by removing a subset  $S = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$  of its nodes. When  $k$  is small, we will simply write  $G - v_1 - v_2 - \dots - v_k$ .

Let  $P_r$  be the path with  $r$  nodes. By *attaching*  $P_r$  to a connected graph  $G$ , we will mean that an end-node of  $P_r$  is identified with a node of  $G$  to form a graph  $H_r$  in which the subgraphs  $P_r$  and  $G$  are in the same component. We say  $P_r$



is added to  $G$  when the two end-nodes of  $P_r$  are attached to different nodes of  $G$ . In this case, we assume that  $G$  has more than two nodes. The resulting graph will be denoted by  $J_r$ . The nodes of  $G$  used in the identification process will be called *nodes of attachment*.

The following lemmas will be useful in the material of this section.

**Lemma 7:** Let  $u$  be the node of attachment of  $H_r$ . Then

$$\gamma(H_r) = \begin{cases} \gamma(G - u) & \text{if } r \text{ is even,} \\ \gamma(G) & \text{if } r \text{ is odd.} \end{cases}$$

**Proof:** Apply the reduction process to  $H_r$  by deleting the edge of  $P_r$  incident to  $u$ . The result follows immediately. ■

**Lemma 8:** Let  $u$  and  $v$  be the nodes of attachment of  $J_r$ . Then

$$\gamma(J_r) = \begin{cases} \gamma(G) + \gamma(G - u - v) & \text{if } r \text{ is even,} \\ \gamma(G - u) + \gamma(G - v) & \text{if } r \text{ is odd.} \end{cases}$$

**Proof:** The result follows easily by applying the reduction process by deleting an edge incident to one of the nodes of attachment and then using Lemma 7. ■

The edges of  $P_{4,n}$  which join nodes of the upper and lower paths are called *link edges*, and the corresponding nodes are called *link nodes*. A *terminal edge* is a link edge which is incident to link nodes of valency 2. Also, we denote the  $n^{\text{th}}$  Fibonacci number by  $F_n$ :  $F_n = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2}$ ,  $F_0 = F_1 = 1$ .

**Theorem 5:** For  $n, m, k \geq 1$ ,

- (i)  $\gamma(S_{4k+2,n}) = n + 1$ ,
- (ii)  $\gamma(S_{4k,n}) = F_{n+1}$ ,
- (iii)  $\gamma(S_{2k+1,2m+1}) = 0$
- (iv)  $\gamma(S_{2k+1,2m}) = m + 1$ .

**Proof:**

- (i) Apply Lemma 8 to  $S_{4k+2,n}$ . In this case  $r$  is even. We get

$$\gamma(S_{4k+2,n}) = \gamma(S_{4k+2,n-1}) + \gamma(B_1), \quad (2)$$

where  $B_1$  is the graph  $S_{4k+2,n-2}$  with  $P_{2k}$  attached to the ends of a terminal edge. Using Lemma 7, with  $r$  even, we get  $\gamma(B_1) = \gamma(B_2)$ , where  $B_2$  is  $S_{4k+2,n-3}$  with  $P_{2k}$  attached to the ends of a terminal edge. By repeated applications of the lemma, we get  $\gamma(B_1) = 1$ . Therefore, from Equation (2),

$$\gamma(S_{4k+2,n}) = \gamma(S_{4k+2,n-1}) + 1.$$

But  $\gamma(S_{4k+2,1}) = \gamma(C_{4k+2}) = 2$ . Therefore, we have

$$\gamma(S_{4k+2,n}) = n + 1.$$

- (ii) Apply Lemma 8 to  $S_{4k,n}$ . Again  $r$  is even, so we get

# FIBONACCI SEQUENCES AND MATCHINGS

$$\gamma(S_{4k,n}) = \gamma(S_{4k,n-1}) + \gamma(A), \quad (3)$$

where  $A$  is  $S_{4k,n-2}$ , with  $P_{2k-1}$  attached to the ends of a terminal edge. Using Lemma 7, with  $r$  odd, we get

$$\gamma(A) = \gamma(S_{4k,n-2}).$$

Hence, from Equation (3), we obtain

$$\gamma(S_{4k,n}) = \gamma(S_{4k,n-1}) + \gamma(S_{4k,n-2}).$$

Clearly  $\gamma(S_{4k,1}) = 2 = F_2$  and  $\gamma(S_{4k,2}) = 3 = F_3$ . Therefore, we define

$$\gamma(S_{4k,0}) = 1 = F_1.$$

Hence, from Equation (3), we have

$$\gamma(S_{4k,n}) = F_{n+1}.$$

(iii) It can be easily verified that  $S_{2k+1,2m+1}$  has an odd number of nodes  $[2(2mk+k-m+1)+1]$ . Hence, the result follows from Lemma 3.

(iv) First, we will label (in order) the link edges of  $S_{2k+1,2m}$  with  $1, 2, 3, \dots, 2m+1$ , beginning with a terminal edge. Let us apply the reduction process to  $S_{2k+1,2m}$  by deleting an even labelled link edge. The graph  $G''$  will contain two components;  $A$ , consisting of  $S_{2k+1,i}$  with the chains  $P_k$  and  $P_{k-1}$  attached to the ends of a terminal edge, and  $B$ , consisting of  $S_{2k+1,j}$  with  $P_k$  and  $P_{k-1}$  attached to the ends of a terminal edge. Clearly,  $i+j = 2m-2$  and both  $i$  and  $j$  will be even. It can be easily confirmed that  $A$  will contain  $2ik+2k-i-1$  nodes. Since this is odd, for all even values of  $i$ , we get

$$\gamma(A) = \gamma(B) = 0 \Rightarrow \gamma(G'') = 0.$$

Hence, no perfect matching contains an even (labelled) link edge. It follows that

$$\gamma(S_{2k+1,2m}) = \gamma(R_m),$$

where  $R_m$  is the polygonal chain  $P_{4k,m}$  obtained from  $P_{4,m}$  by replacing each upper edge with  $2k$  edges and each lower edge with  $2k-2$  edges.

Apply Lemma 8 to  $R_m$ . This gives

$$\gamma(R_m) = \gamma(R_{m-1}) + \gamma(B), \quad (4)$$

where  $B$  is the graph  $R_{m-2}$  with  $P_{2k}$  and  $P_{2k-2}$  attached to the ends of a terminal edge. Hence, by an analysis similar to that used in establishing (i), we get

$$\gamma(R_m) = m+1 = \gamma(S_{2k+1,2m}). \quad \blacksquare$$

We now give bounds for general polygonal chains comprising  $(2k+1)$ -gons.

**Theorem 6:** For  $m, k \geq 1$ ,  $m+1 \leq \gamma(P_{2k+1,2m}) \leq F_{m+1}$ .

**Proof:** Let us construct  $P_{2k+1,2m}$  from  $P_{4,2m}$  by replacing the first pair of upper and lower edges with  $P_{k+1}$  and  $P_k$ , respectively, the second pair by  $P_k$  and  $P_{k+1}$ , respectively, the third pair by  $P_{k+1}$  and  $P_k$ , respectively, and so on.

# FIBONACCI SEQUENCES AND MATCHINGS

As we have shown above [(iii) of Theorem 5], no even link edge can belong to a perfect matching. Therefore, we can remove all the even labelled edges to obtain a graph which contains the same number of perfect matchings as  $P_{2k+1, 2m}$ . In this case, the graph will be  $S_{4k, m}$ . Therefore,

$$\gamma(P_{2k+1, 2m}) = \gamma(S_{4k, m}) = F_{m+1}, \text{ by (ii) of Theorem 5.} \quad (5)$$

When  $P_{2k+1, 2m}$  is the graph  $S_{2k+1, 2m}$ , we get

$$\gamma(P_{2k+1, 2m}) = \gamma(S_{2k+1, 2m}) = m + 1, \text{ by (i) of Theorem 5.}$$

It can be seen from the proof of Theorem 5(iv) that, in the general case, the minimum value of  $\gamma(B)$  in (4) is 1 and the maximum value is  $\gamma(P_{2k+1, 2m-2})$ , and the result follows. ■

The following theorem is the long-chain analogue of Theorem 5.

**Theorem 7:** For  $k \geq 1$ ,  $m \geq 2$ , and  $n \geq 3$ ,

- (i)  $\gamma(L_{4k+2, n}) = 4$ ,
- (ii)  $\gamma(L_{4k, 2m}) = \gamma(S_{4k, 2m-1}) + \gamma(S_{4k, 2m-3}) + 2 = F_{2m} + F_{2m-2} + 2$ ,
- (iii)  $\gamma(L_{4k, 2m+1}) = \gamma(S_{4k, 2m}) + \gamma(S_{4k, 2m-1}) = F_{2m+1} + F_{2m-1}$ ,
- (iv)  $\gamma(L_{2k+1, 2m-1}) = 0$ ,
- (v)  $\gamma(L_{2k+1, 2m}) = 4$ .

**Proof:**

(i) It can be easily confirmed that no perfect matching in  $L_{4k+2, n}$  can contain a link edge. Therefore,

$$\gamma(L_{4k+2, n}) = \gamma(A) = 4,$$

where  $A$  is the graph consisting of two disjoint cycles each with  $2kn$  nodes.

(ii) and (iii),  $k > 1$ : Apply the reduction process of  $L_{4k, r}$  by deleting the second upper edge (counting from the edge adjacent to a link edge) of a cell. Continue to apply the reduction process in the same manner to both  $G'$  and  $G''$ , but this time using the corresponding lower edge. The four resulting graphs will be the following: (1)  $A_{r-1}$ , consisting of the graphs  $S_{4k, r-1}$  with  $P_2$  attached to each end of a terminal edge and  $P_{2k-2}$  attached to the ends of the other terminal edge; (2)  $B_{r-1}$ , consisting of the graph  $S_{4k, r-1}$  with  $P_2$  and  $P_{k-2}$  attached to its two upper terminal nodes and  $P_{2k-3}$  attached to the other end of the terminal edge adjacent to an edge of  $P_{k-2}$  (note that  $B_{r-1}$  will occur twice); and (3)  $D_{r-1}$ , the graph  $S_{4k, r-1}$  with the odd chain  $P_{2k-3}$  attached to the ends of a terminal edge.

It can be confirmed that:

- 1.  $\gamma(A_{r-1}) = \gamma(S_{4k, r-3})$ ;
- 2.  $\gamma(B_{r-1}) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } r \text{ is even,} \\ 0 & \text{if } r \text{ is odd;} \end{cases}$
- 3.  $\gamma(D_{r-1}) = \gamma(S_{4k, r-1})$ .

# FIBONACCI SEQUENCES AND MATCHINGS

For  $k = 1$ , the reduction process can be applied by deleting any upper edge. The graphs corresponding to  $A_{r-1}$ ,  $B_{r-1}$ , and  $D_{r-1}$  will be  $S_{4k, r-1}$ ,  $S_{4k, r-3}$  with  $P_2$  attached to the two upper terminal nodes, and  $S_{4k, r-3}$ , respectively. Hence, for  $k \geq 1$ , we get

$$\gamma(L_{4k, r}) = \gamma(S_{4k, r-1}) + \gamma(S_{4k, r-3}) + \delta,$$

$$\text{where } \delta = \begin{cases} 2 & \text{if } r \text{ is even,} \\ 0 & \text{if } r \text{ is odd.} \end{cases}$$

The results (ii) and (iii) then follow from Theorem 5(ii).

(iv) It can easily be verified that  $L_{2k+1, 2m+1}$  has an odd number of nodes. Therefore, the result follows.

(v) This is similar to Theorem 5(iv). ■

**Theorem 8:** For  $m \geq 2$  and  $k \geq 1$ ,  $4 \leq \gamma(C_{2k+1, 2m}) \leq 2(F_m + F_{m-2})$ .

**Proof:** The proof is similar to that of Theorem 6. It follows by applying the reduction process to  $C_{2k+1, 2m}$ , then using Equation (5) and Theorem 7(v). ■

Note that Theorems 3 and 4 are special cases of Theorems 6 and 8, respectively, when  $k = 1$ .

## REFERENCES

1. E. J. Farrell. "Introduction to Matching Polynomials." *J. Comb. Theory B* 27 (1979):75-86.
2. E. J. Farrell. "Matchings in Ladders." *ARS Combinatoria* 6 (1978):153-161.
3. E. J. Farrell. "Matchings in Triangular Animals." *J. Comb. Info. and Systems Sciences* 7, no. 2 (1982):143-154.
4. E. J. Farrell & S. A. Wahid. "Matchings in Benzene Chains." *Discrete Applied Math.* 7 (1984):45-54.
5. E. J. Farrell & S. A. Wahid. "Matchings in Pentagonal Chains." *Discrete Applied Math.* 8 (1984):31-40.
6. F. Harary. *Graph Theory*. Reading, Mass.: Addison-Wesley, 1969.
7. F. Harary & E. Palmer. *Graphical Enumeration*. New York, London: Academic Press, 1973.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENT

The author thanks the referee for his invaluable suggestions, which helped to expand this paper to its present form.

◆◆◆◆

# THE FIBONACCI RATIO IN A THERMODYNAMICAL PROBLEM: A COMBINATORIAL APPROACH

J.-P. GALLINAR

*Universidad Simon Bolivar, Apartado 80659, Caracas 108, Venezuela  
(Submitted March 1984)*

In a previous contribution to this journal [1], the author showed how the Fibonacci ratio arises in the solution of a particular thermodynamical problem, namely, the calculation of the entropy of a chain of electrons localized onto lattice sites with density one, and with the constraints that half the lattice sites may contain at most two electrons each, while the other half may contain at most only one electron each. The use of the thermodynamical grand-canonical formulation [1], while simplifying the calculation, greatly obscured the purely combinatorial nature of the problem, which we think is by itself a fascinating one, and which we purport here to present.

The problem in [1] might be restated as follows: Given  $2N$  different boxes, and  $2N$  identical coins, with half the boxes containing at most two coins each, and the other half containing at most one coin each, in how many different ways can one arrange or put the  $2N$  coins into the  $2N$  boxes, as  $N \rightarrow \infty$ ? Although a single coin may be put into a box in two different ways, as head or tail, we shall agree that once we put two coins into a box we shall not inquire as to which is head or which is tail, and shall count that arrangement as only one.

With this understanding, it is straightforward to show, in a purely combinatorial manner, that the total number of arrangements  $A(N)$  of the  $2N$  coins in the  $2N$  boxes, is given by

$$A(N) = 2^{2N} \sum_{k=N}^{2N} 2^{-k} \binom{2N}{k} \binom{N}{2N-k}, \quad (1)$$

for  $N = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ . The above expression is exact and holds for any  $N \geq 1$ ; a proof of (1) is given in the text.

The Fibonacci ratio arises from (1) through the "entropy"  $S(N)$  associated with the number of arrangements  $A(N)$ , i.e.,

$$S(N) \equiv \ln A(N), \quad (2)$$

and the extensive property of the entropy in the thermodynamic limit ( $N \rightarrow \infty$ ), i.e.,

$$\lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{S(N)}{N} = \ln k, \text{ with } k \equiv f^5, \quad (3)$$

a constant independent of  $N$ , where here  $f \equiv (1 + \sqrt{5})/2$  is the positive Fibonacci ratio.

In the remainder of this paper we give the proofs of Equations (1) and (3). Equation (1) can be proved by the use of the well-known generating function method [2] of combinatorial analysis.

Thus,  $A(N)$  will be the coefficient of an  $x^{2N}$  in the expansion in powers of  $x$  of the appropriate generating or enumerating function,

$$G(x) = (1 + 2x)^N (1 + 2x + x^2)^N = (1 + 2x)^N (1 + x)^{2N}. \quad (4)$$

# THE FIBONACCI RATIO IN A THERMODYNAMICAL PROBLEM

In the enumerating function  $G(x)$  in (4), the enumerating factor  $(1 + 2x)^N$  takes account of the  $N$  boxes that contain at most one coin each, while the enumerating factor  $(1 + x)^{2N}$  takes account of the  $N$  boxes that contain at most two coins each. But,

$$G(x) = \left( \sum_{\ell=0}^N \binom{N}{\ell} (2x)^\ell \right) \cdot \left( \sum_{m=0}^{2N} \binom{2N}{m} x^m \right) = \sum_{\ell=0}^N \sum_{m=0}^{2N} 2^\ell \binom{N}{\ell} \binom{2N}{m} x^{\ell+m}. \quad (5)$$

The coefficient of  $x^{2N}$  will thus be given by the sum of all the terms in (5), such that  $\ell + m = 2N$ , i.e., by

$$\sum_{m=N}^{2N} 2^{2N-m} \binom{N}{2N-m} \binom{2N}{m},$$

which proves Equation (1).

We now proceed to give the proof of Equation (3). When  $N \rightarrow \infty$ , each term in the right-hand side of Equation (1), with  $N \leq k \leq 2N$ , is a product of a very rapidly increasing function of  $k$ , namely  $[(2N - k)!]^{-2}$ , times a very rapidly decreasing function of  $k$ , namely  $[2^k k! (k - N)!]^{-1}$ . In the thermodynamic limit,  $N \rightarrow \infty$ , the product of the two functions will have an extremely sharp maximum for some value of  $k$ , with  $N \leq k \leq 2N$ . In the limit  $N \rightarrow \infty$ , the entire right-hand side summation in Equation (1) can thus be replaced by the maximum term in the same summation, in an asymptotically exact manner.

We will then have

$$\frac{S(N)}{N} = 2 \ln 2 + \frac{1}{N} \ln \left( \sum_{k=N}^{2N} P(k; N) \right), \quad (6)$$

where

$$P(k; N) \equiv 2^{-k} \binom{2N}{k} \binom{N}{2N-k},$$

and hence

$$\lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{S(N)}{N} = 2 \ln 2 + \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{N} [\ln P(k; N)]_{\text{Max.}}, \quad (7)$$

where we have used  $\ln[P(k; N)]_{\text{Max.}} = [\ln P(k; N)]_{\text{Max.}}$ . But

$$\begin{aligned} \ln P(k; N) &= -k \ln 2 + \ln(2N)! - \ln k! - \ln(2N - k)! \\ &\quad + \ln N! - \ln(2N - k)! - \ln(k - N)!, \end{aligned} \quad (8)$$

and by the Stirling approximation, we have that (for  $N \rightarrow \infty$ )

$$\ln N! = N(\ln N - 1) + \frac{1}{2} \ln N + C_N, \quad (9)$$

where  $C_N$  is a number of the order of unity.

Then, we will obviously have that

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{N} [\ln P(k; N)]_{\text{Max.}} &= \left[ \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{N} \ln P(k; N) \right]_{\text{Max.}} \\ &= \left\{ \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{N} [-k \ln 2 - k(\ln k - 1) - 2(2N - k)(\ln(2N - k) - 1) \right. \\ &\quad \left. - (k - N)(\ln(k - N) - 1) + Q(N)] \right\}_{\text{Max.}} \equiv [\mathcal{P}(k; N)]_{\text{Max.}}, \end{aligned} \quad (10)$$

# THE FIBONACCI RATIO IN A THERMODYNAMICAL PROBLEM

where

$$Q(N) = 2N \ln 2 + 3N(\ln N - 1) \quad (11)$$

is a function of  $N$  only.

It is important to notice that the terms in

$$\frac{1}{2} \ln N + C_N$$

in the Stirling approximation in (9) and the corresponding ones for  $(2N - k)!$ ,  $k!$ , and  $(k - N)!$  contribute *nothing* to the limit in (10), since, typically,

$$\lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{N} \left( \frac{1}{2} \ln N + C_N \right) = 0.$$

To find the maximum of the function  $\mathcal{P}(k; N)$  defined in (10), we find the value of  $k$ , such that

$$\frac{d}{dk} \mathcal{P}(k; N) = 0, \quad (12)$$

where  $N$  is considered as a parameter. This value of  $k$  is then substituted back into  $\mathcal{P}(k; N)$  to give  $(\mathcal{P}(k; N))_{\text{Max.}}$ .

Interchanging the derivative with the limit in (10), Equation (12) leads to

$$\begin{aligned} -\ln 2 - \ln k + 1 - \frac{k}{N} + 2(\ln(2N - k) - 1) \\ + 2 \frac{(2N - k)}{(2N - k)} - \ln(k - N) + 1 - \frac{(k - N)}{(k - N)} = 0, \end{aligned} \quad (13)$$

or

$$-\ln 2 - \ln k + 2 \ln(2N - k) - \ln(k - N) = 0, \quad (14)$$

for  $k$ .

Finally, Equation (14) leads to

$$\frac{(2N - k)^2}{2k(k - N)} = 1,$$

or the quadratic equation

$$\left( \frac{k}{2N} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{k}{2N} \right) - 1 = 0, \quad (15)$$

for  $k$ . Because  $k$  must be a positive number, the only appropriate solution of (15) is

$$\frac{k}{2N} = \frac{1}{f}, \quad (N \leq k \leq 2N),$$

where  $f$  is the positive Fibonacci ratio. Hence, we will have

$$\begin{aligned} (\mathcal{P}(k; N))_{\text{Max.}} = \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{N} \left[ -\frac{2N}{f} \ln 2 - \frac{2N}{f} \left( \ln \left( \frac{2N}{f} \right) - 1 \right) - 2 \left( 2N - \frac{2N}{f} \right) \left( \ln \left( 2N - \frac{2N}{f} \right) - 1 \right) \right. \\ \left. - \left( \frac{2N}{f} - N \right) \left( \ln \left( \frac{2N}{f} - N \right) - 1 \right) + Q(N) \right] = \end{aligned}$$

(continued)

# THE FIBONACCI RATIO IN A THERMODYNAMICAL PROBLEM

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= -\frac{2}{f} \ln 2 - \frac{2}{f} \ln 2 + \frac{2}{f} \ln f + \frac{2}{f} - \frac{4}{f}(f-1)(\ln 2 + \ln(f-1) - \ln f - 1) \\
 &\quad - \frac{(2-f)}{f}(\ln(2-f) - \ln f - 1) + 2 \ln 2 - 3 \\
 &= -2 \ln 2 + 3 \ln f + \frac{4}{f} \ln(f-1) - 4 \ln(f-1) - \frac{2}{f} \ln(2-f) + \ln(2-f).
 \end{aligned}
 \tag{16}$$

By using the relationships  $\ln(f-1) = -\ln f$  and  $\ln(2-f) = -2 \ln f$ , which hold true for the Fibonacci ratio  $f$ , (16) finally leads to the remarkably simple result

$$(\mathcal{P}(k; N))_{\text{Max.}} = -2 \ln 2 + 5 \ln f,$$

or, finally,

$$\lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{S(N)}{N} = 5 \ln f.$$

This proves Equation (3) and coincides, of course, with the result obtained in [1] through the use of the grand-canonical formalism.

## REFERENCES

1. J.-P. Gallinar. "Fibonacci Ratio in a Thermodynamical Case." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 17, no. 3 (1979):239.
2. J. Riordan. *An Introduction to Combinatorial Analysis*. New York: Wiley, 1967, Chapter 2.

◆◆◆◆



## A FURTHER NOTE ON PASCAL GRAPHS

BHABANI P. SINHA, SURANJAN GHOSE, BHARGAB B. BHATTACHARYA  
*Indian Statistical Institute, Calcutta-700 035, India*

and

PRADIP K. SRIMANI  
*Southern Illinois University, Carbondale, IL 62901*  
(Submitted March 1984)

### 1. INTRODUCTION

In a recent paper Deo and Quinn [1], in their search for a class of graphs to be used as computer networks, introduced Pascal graphs that are constructed using Pascal's triangle modulo 2 [3]. They derived a number of useful results for Pascal graphs and Pascal matrices and, in the conclusion, they made certain interesting conjectures. The objective of the present note is to find an exact expression for the number of edges in Pascal graphs of different orders and to settle one of the conjectures made in [1].

We have used standard graph theoretic terms [4], [5] in this paper, and the reader is assumed to be familiar with [1].

### 2. BASIC CONCEPTS

**Definition 1:** A Pascal matrix  $PM_n$  of order  $n$  is defined to be an  $n \times n$  symmetric binary matrix where the main diagonal entries are all 0's and the lower triangular part of the matrix consists of the first  $(n - 1)$  rows of Pascal's triangle modulo 2.  $PM_n(i, j)$  denotes the  $(i, j)^{\text{th}}$  element of  $PM_n$ . A Pascal graph  $PG_n$  having  $n$  vertices is a graph corresponding to the adjacency matrix  $PM_n$ .

**Remark:** This definition of a Pascal matrix is the same as in [1] in contrast to that in [2].

**Definition 2:** The generator polynomial of the  $m^{\text{th}}$  row,  $m \geq 1$ , of a Pascal matrix  $PM_n$  of any fixed order  $n \geq m$  is defined to be a polynomial  $f_m(x)$  with binary coefficients such that  $PM_n(m, j)$  is given by the coefficient of  $x^{j-1}$  in  $f_m(x)$ ,  $1 \leq j \leq n$ .

Since  $PM_n(m, m) = 0$  by definition, we can write, for a Pascal matrix  $PM_n$ ,  $n \geq m$ ,

$$f_m(x) = \begin{cases} g_m(x) + x^m h_m(x), & \text{for } n > m \\ g_m(x), & \text{for } n = m, \end{cases}$$

where  $g_m(x)$  and  $h_m(x)$  are the generator polynomials of the lower and the upper triangular parts, respectively, of the  $m^{\text{th}}$  row in  $PM_n$ . By definition,  $g_m(x)$  applies only for  $m \geq 2$ .

**Definition 3:** The  $B$ -sequence of a positive integer  $n$  is defined as the strictly decreasing sequence  $B(n) = (p_1, p_2, \dots, p_{L_n})$  of  $L_n$  nonnegative integers

## A FURTHER NOTE ON PASCAL GRAPHS

such that

$$n = \sum_{j=1}^{L_n} 2^{p_j},$$

where  $L_n$  is the length of the sequence.

**Remarks:** (1) The  $B$ -sequence of any positive integer  $n$  gives the positions of 1's in the binary representation of  $n$  in decreasing order.

(2) The  $B$ -sequence of zero is defined to be a null sequence.

**Lemma 1:** For any Pascal matrix  $PM_n$  with  $n \geq m$ ,

(a) For  $m \geq 2$ ,  $g_m(x) = \prod_{j \in B(m-2)} (1 + x^{2^j})$ .

(b) For  $m \geq 1$ ,  $h_m(x) = \prod_{\substack{j \geq 0 \\ j \notin B(m-1)}} (1 + x^{2^j})$ .

**Proof:**

(a) From the definitions of a Pascal matrix and  $g_m(x)$ , it is apparent that  $g_m(x) = (1+x)^{m-2}$ , with the coefficients computed in the modulo 2 field, from which the proof follows.

(b) Since  $PM_n$  is symmetric,  $h_m(x)$  will contain  $x^k$  as a nonzero term iff  $g_{m+k+1}(x)$  contains  $x^{m-1}$  as a nonzero term,  $k \geq 0$ . This is possible if and only if  $B(m+k-1)$  contains  $B(m-1)$  as a subsequence, i.e., when there is no element common to both  $B(k)$  and  $B(m-1)$ . Hence the claim.

**Example:** In a Pascal matrix of order  $n = 30$ ,

$$f_{13}(x) = (1+x)(1+x^2)(1+x^8) + x^{13}(1+x)(1+x^2)(1+x^{16}),$$

$$f_{20}(x) = (1+x^2)(1+x^{16}) + x^{20}(1+x^4)(1+x^8).$$

**Remark:** For any  $m$ ,  $m \geq 2$ ,  $(1+x)$  is a factor of  $g_m(x)$  iff  $(1+x)$  is also a factor of  $h_m(x)$ , since  $B(n)$ ,  $n > 0$ , can contain 0 only when  $n$  is odd.

**Definition 4:** The  $m^{\text{th}}$  row of  $PM_n$  will be called the  $p^{\text{th}}$  instance of all 1's in the lower triangle if  $m = 2^p + 1$ ,  $p \geq 1$ .

### 3. NUMBER OF EDGES IN PASCAL GRAPHS

Let  $e(n)$  denote the number of edges in  $PG_n$ . Deo and Quinn [1] showed that

$$e(n) \leq \lfloor (n-1)^{\log_2 3} \rfloor.$$

In this section we find an exact expression for  $e(n)$ .

**Lemma 2:** In a Pascal graph  $PG_n$ , where

$$n = (2^p + 1) + i,$$

for some nonnegative integer  $p$  and  $1 \leq i \leq 2^p$ , the degree  $d(n)$  of the  $n^{\text{th}}$  vertex in  $PG_n$  is given by

# A FURTHER NOTE ON PASCAL GRAPHS

$$d(n) = 2d(i+1),$$

where  $d(i+1)$  denotes the degree of the  $(i+1)^{\text{st}}$  vertex in  $PG_{i+1}$ .

**Proof:** In  $PM_n$ , the  $n^{\text{th}}$  row has only its lower triangular part and so does the  $(i+1)^{\text{th}}$  row in  $PM_{i+1}$ . Hence, in  $PM_n$ ,

$$f_n(x) = g_n(x) = (1+x)^{n-2} = (1+x)^{2^p} \cdot (1+x)^{i-1}.$$

Since the coefficients of the polynomials are computed in a modulo 2 field, we get

$$g_n(x) = (1+x^{2^p}) \cdot g_{i+1}(x).$$

Therefore, since  $i \leq 2^p$ , the number of nonzero terms in  $g_n(x)$  is twice that in  $g_{i+1}(x)$ . Hence  $d(n) = 2d(i+1)$ . Q.E.D.

If the  $n^{\text{th}}$  row of  $PM_n$  corresponds to the  $p^{\text{th}}$  instance ( $p \geq 1$ ) of all 1's in its lower triangular part, i.e., if  $n = 2^p + 1$ , then we also denote the number of edges in  $PG_n$  by  $E(p)$ , i.e.,  $E(p) = e(2^p + 1)$ .

**Lemma 3:**  $E(p) = 3^p$ .

**Proof:**  $E(p)$  = Number of edges in  $PG$  of order  $(2^{p-1} + 1)$   
 + Number of edges added due to addition of extra  $2^{p-1}$  vertices  
 $= E(p-1) + 2E(p-1)$  [by Lemma 2]  
 $= 3E(p-1)$   
 $= 3^2 E(p-2) = \dots = 3^{p-1} E(1)$ .

Now  $E(1)$  corresponds to the number of edges in  $PG_3$ , which is 3. Hence, we get

$$E(p) = 3^p. \quad \text{Q.E.D.}$$

**Theorem 1:** The number of edges in  $PG_n$  ( $n > 1$ ) is given by

$$e(n) = \sum_{j=1}^{L_{n-1}} 2^{j-1} \cdot 3^{p_j},$$

where  $(p_1, p_2, \dots, p_{L_{n-1}})$  is the  $B$ -sequence  $B(n-1)$  of length  $L_{n-1}$ .

**Proof:** Let  $n-1 = n_1 + n_2 + \dots + n_k$ , where  $k = L_{n-1}$ ,  $n_i = 2^{p_i}$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . Hence the  $(n_1+1)^{\text{th}}$  row of  $PM_n$  corresponds to the  $p_1^{\text{th}}$  instance of all 1's in the lower triangle, and so by Lemmas 2 and 3,

$$\begin{aligned} e(n) &= E(p_1) + \text{extra edges due to addition of vertices } v_{n_1+2}, \dots, v_n \\ &\quad \text{to } PG_{n_1+1} \\ &= 3^{p_1} + 2e(n_2 + n_3 + \dots + n_k + 1) = 3^{p_1} + 2e(n'), \end{aligned}$$

where  $n' = (1 + n_2) + n_3 + \dots + n_k$ . Repeating the process, we get

$$\begin{aligned} e(n) &= 3^{p_1} + 2(3^{p_2} + 2e(n'')) \quad [\text{where } n'' = n_3 + n_4 + \dots + n_k + 1] \\ &= \dots \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^k 2^{j-1} \cdot 3^{p_j}. \quad \text{Q.E.D.} \end{aligned}$$

#### 4. DETERMINANTS OF PASCAL MATRICES

We now settle one of the conjectures made in [1] regarding the values of  $n$  for which the determinant of  $PM_n$  will be zero.

Let us consider an integer  $A$  which is either 2 or can be expressed as

$$A = 2 + (a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_k),$$

where  $a_1 = 4$  or 8, and  $a_{i+1} = 4a_i$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq k$ .

We now define the *index set*  $I$  of  $A$  as follows:

$$I = \begin{cases} \varnothing, & \text{for } A = 2 \\ \{1, 2, \dots, k\}, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Let the cardinality of  $I$  be denoted by  $t$ . It can be verified that for  $A > 2$ , we can write

$$A = 1 + \sum_{j=0}^t 4^j, \quad \text{for } a_1 = 4 \quad (1)$$

and

$$A = 2 \sum_{j=0}^t 4^j, \quad \text{for } a_1 = 8. \quad (2)$$

Both (1) and (2) also apply for  $A = 2$ , i.e., for  $t = 0$  as well. Let  $a'_i = 2a_i$ , for  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . We use an arbitrary subset  $I' = \{j_1, j_2, \dots, j_p\}$  of  $I$  to denote different integers generated from  $A$  as follows:

$$A_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_p} = 2 + \sum_{i \in I'} a'_i + \sum_{i \in I - I'} a_i.$$

When  $\{j_1, j_2, \dots, j_p\} = \varnothing$ ,  $A_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_p} = A$  itself.

Let  $P(I)$  be the power set of  $I$ . We define the expansion set  $S(A)$  of  $A$  as

$$S(A) = \left\{ A_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_p} \mid \{j_1, j_2, \dots, j_p\} \in P(I) \right\}.$$

**Example:** For  $A = 2$ ,  $S(A) = \{2\}$ .

$$\text{For } A = 22, a_1 = 4, a_2 = 16, a'_1 = 8, a'_2 = 32,$$

$$A_1 = 2 + a'_1 + a_2 = 26,$$

$$A_2 = 2 + a_1 + a'_2 = 38,$$

$$A_{12} = 2 + a'_1 + a'_2 = 42,$$

$$\text{and } S(A) = \{22, 26, 38, 42\}.$$

The  $r$ -distant co-expansion set  $T_r(A)$  of  $A$  is defined as

$$T_r(A) = \left\{ A_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_p} + r \mid A_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_p} \in S(A) \right\}.$$

We construct a set of polynomials of the form  $F_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_q}^{i_1 i_2 \dots i_p}$ , where

$$\{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_p\} \subseteq I, \{j_1, j_2, \dots, j_q\} \subseteq I, 1 \in \{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_p\}$$

and

$$\{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_p\} \cap \{j_1, j_2, \dots, j_q\} = \varnothing,$$

# A FURTHER NOTE ON PASCAL GRAPHS

using the following recurrence relation:

$$F_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_q}^{i_1 i_2 \dots i_p} = F_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_q}^{i_1 i_2 \dots i_{p-1}} - F_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_q}^{i_1 i_2 \dots i_{p-1} i_p},$$

with

$$F_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_q}^1 = (f_{A_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_q}} - f_{A_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_q} + 2}) - (f_{A_{1 j_1 j_2 \dots j_q}} - f_{A_{1 j_1 j_2 \dots j_q} + 2}),$$

where the  $f$ 's are the generator polynomials as given in Definition 2.

It may be noted that if  $\{j_1, j_2, \dots, j_q\} = \emptyset$ , then the polynomial is represented simply as  $F^{i_1 i_2 \dots i_p}$ , i.e., without a subscript. Moreover, the superscript set  $\{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_p\}$  can never be empty.

**Example:** Let  $A = 22$ . Hence  $I = \{1, 2\}$ ,  $A_1 = 26$ ,  $A_2 = 38$ ,  $A_{12} = 42$ ,

$$F^1 = (f_A - f_{A+2}) - (f_{A_1} - f_{A_1+2}) = (f_{22} - f_{24}) - (f_{26} - f_{28})$$

$$F_2^1 = (f_{38} - f_{40}) - (f_{42} - f_{44})$$

$$F^{12} = F^1 - F_2^1 = (f_{22} - f_{24}) - (f_{26} - f_{28}) - [(f_{38} - f_{40}) - (f_{42} - f_{44})].$$

In particular, the polynomials of the form  $F^{i_1 i_2 \dots i_p}$  will play an important role in proving the conjecture, as we shall see later on. The recursive computation of such polynomials can be visualized easily with the help of a binary tree. Consider, for example, the computation of  $F^{123}$ , which is represented by the binary tree as shown in Figure 1. The leaf nodes represent the generator polynomials corresponding to different rows of the Pascal matrix and each of the non-leaf nodes represents the arithmetic subtraction operation. Some of the non-leaf nodes are labelled, e.g.,  $F^1$ ,  $F_2^1$ ,  $F^{12}$ , etc. The inorder traversal [6] of the subtree rooted at any labelled non-leaf node computes the polynomial denoted by that label.

Let  $[\alpha_t, \beta_t]$  be a closed interval of integers given by

$$\alpha_t = 2 + 2 \sum_{j=0}^t 4^j, \quad \beta_t = 1 + \sum_{j=0}^{t+1} 4^j, \quad t \geq 0. \quad (3)$$

**Theorem 2:** In a Pascal matrix of order  $n$ , where  $n$  lies within the closed interval  $[\alpha_t, \beta_t]$ , as defined in (3), the  $2^{t+1}$  rows denoted by the expansion set  $S(A)$  and the 2-distant co-expansion set  $T_2(A)$  of the integer  $A$  as given in (1) are linearly dependent, i.e., the determinant of  $PM_n$  for such values of  $n$  will be zero.

**Proof:**

Case 1.  $t = 0$

In this case,  $\alpha_0 = 4$ ,  $\beta_0 = 6$ , and  $A = 2$ . So  $S(A) = \{2\}$  and  $T_2(A) = \{4\}$ . Since the order  $n$  of the Pascal matrix is limited by  $\beta_0 = 6$ , we write

$$f_2 = 1 + x^2(1 + x^2) \quad \text{and} \quad f_4 = (1 + x^2) + x^4.$$

So

$$f_2 - f_4 = 0.$$

Case 2.  $t \geq 1$

To prove the linear dependence among the different rows of  $PM_n$ , it is sufficient to show that any of the polynomials of the form  $F_{j_1 j_2 \dots j_q}^{i_1 i_2 \dots i_p}$  will be zero.

# A FURTHER NOTE ON PASCAL GRAPHS

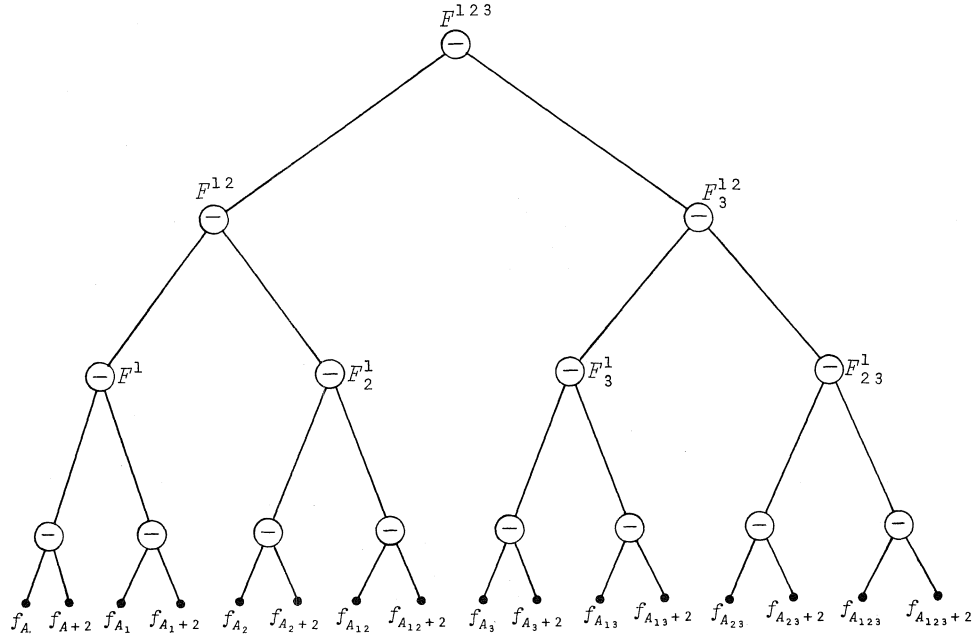


Figure 1

Since the order  $n$  of  $PM_n$  is limited by  $\beta_t$ , we write

$$f_A = (1 + x^{a_1})(1 + x^{a_2}) \cdots (1 + x^{a_t}) \\ + x^A(1 + x^2)(1 + x^{a'_1})(1 + x^{a'_2}) \cdots (1 + x^{a'_t})$$

and

$$f_{A+2} = (1 + x^2)(1 + x^{a_1}) \cdots (1 + x^{a_t}) + x^{A+2}(1 + x^{a'_1}) \cdots (1 + x^{a'_t}).$$

Hence,

$$f_A - f_{A+2} = -x^2(1 + x^{a_1})(1 + x^{a_2}) \cdots (1 + x^{a_t}) \\ + x^A(1 + x^{a'_1}) \cdots (1 + x^{a'_t}).$$

Similarly,

$$f_{A_1} - f_{A_1+2} = -x^2(1 + x^{a'_1})(1 + x^{a_2}) \cdots (1 + x^{a_t}) \\ + x^{A_1}(1 + x^{a_1})(1 + x^{a'_2}) \cdots (1 + x^{a'_t}).$$

Hence,

$$F^1 = -x^2x^{a_1}(1 - x^{a_1})(1 + x^{a_2}) \cdots (1 + x^{a_t}) \\ + x^A(1 - x^{a_1})(1 + x^{a'_2}) \cdots (1 + x^{a'_t}).$$

Also,

$$F_2^1 = (f_{A_2} - f_{A_2+2}) - (f_{A_{12}} - f_{A_{12}+2}) \\ = -x^2x^{a_1}(1 - x^{a_1})(1 + x^{a'_2})(1 + x^{a_3}) \cdots (1 + x^{a_t}) \\ + x^{A_2}(1 - x^{a_1})(1 + x^{a_2})(1 + x^{a'_3}) \cdots (1 + x^{a'_t})$$

and

$$F^{12} = F^1 - F_2^1 \\ = -x^2x^{a_1}x^{a_2}(1 - x^{a_1})(1 - x^{a_2})(1 + x^{a_3}) \cdots (1 + x^{a_t}) \\ + x^A(1 - x^{a_1})(1 - x^{a_2})(1 + x^{a'_3}) \cdots (1 + x^{a'_t}).$$

## A FURTHER NOTE ON PASCAL GRAPHS

Continuing the process, we get

$$F^{123\dots t} = -x^{2+a_1+a_2+\dots+a_t}(1-x^{a_1})(1-x^{a_2})\dots(1-x^{a_t}) \\ + x^A(1-x^{a_1})(1-x^{a_2})\dots(1-x^{a_t}) = 0. \quad \text{Q.E.D.}$$

Let  $[\gamma_t, \delta_t]$  be a closed interval of integers given by

$$\gamma_t = 4 + 4 \sum_{j=0}^t 4^j, \quad \delta_t = 2 \sum_{j=0}^{t+1} 4^j, \quad t \geq 0. \quad (4)$$

**Theorem 3:** In a Pascal matrix of order  $n$ , where  $n$  lies within the closed interval  $[\gamma_t, \delta_t]$ , as defined in (4), the  $2^{t+1}$  rows denoted by the expansion set  $S(A)$  and the 6-distant co-expansion set  $T_6(A)$  of the integer  $A$  as given in (2) are linearly dependent, i.e., the determinant of  $PM_n$  for such values of  $n$  will be zero.

**Proof:** The proof is similar to that of Theorem 2 and is omitted here.

**Remarks:** (1)  $\gamma_t = \beta_t + 2$  and  $\alpha_{t+1} = \delta_t + 2$ .

(2) For all  $t$ ,  $t \geq 0$ ,  $[\alpha_t, \beta_t]$ , and  $[\gamma_t, \delta_t]$  give two series of intervals of orders of Pascal matrices having zero determinants.

(3) In a Pascal matrix  $PM_n$ , where  $n = \beta_t + 1$  or  $\delta_t + 1$ ,  $t \geq 0$ , the approach used in the proof of Theorem 2 fails to discover a set of linearly dependent rows. This can be seen as follows:

If  $n = \beta_t + 1$ , then we must consider terms up to  $x^{\beta_t}$  in the generator polynomials of the rows of  $PM_n$ . Since  $\beta_t = A + 4^{t+1} = A + \alpha_{t+1}$ ,  $t \geq 0$ , only the polynomial  $f_A$  will have an added term  $(1 + x^{\alpha_{t+1}})$  in its  $h_A$ -part; all other polynomials, e.g.,  $f_{A+2}$ ,  $f_{A_1}$ ,  $f_{A_1+2}$ , ..., etc., as given in the proof of Theorem 2, will remain unaltered. Hence,  $F^{123\dots t}$  will not be zero. The case for  $n = \delta_t + 1$  can be similarly verified.

### ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The authors are grateful to the referee for his constructive criticism and valuable comments.

### REFERENCES

1. N. Deo & M. J. Quinn. "Pascal Graphs and Their Properties." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 21, no. 3 (1983):203-214.
2. W. F. Lunon. "The Pascal Matrix." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 15, no. 3 (1977): 201-204.
3. C. T. Long. "Pascal's Triangle Modulo  $p$ ." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 19, no. 5 (1981):458-463.
4. F. Harary. *Graph Theory*. Reading, Mass.: Addison Wesley, 1969.
5. N. Deo. *Graph Theory with Applications to Engineering and Computer Science*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, 1974.
6. D. E. Knuth. *The Art of Computer Programming*, Vol. I, 2nd ed. Reading, Mass.: Addison Wesley, 1977.

◆◆◆◆

# ON FIBONACCI $k$ -ARY TREES

DEREK K. CHANG

California State University, Los Angeles, CA 90032

(Submitted August 1984)

In this paper we extend some results on Fibonacci binary trees to Fibonacci  $k$ -ary trees,  $k \geq 2$ . The multinomial coefficients and higher-order Fibonacci numbers are used in our study.

For any integer  $k \geq 2$ , let  $\{F_n^k, n \geq 0\}$  be a sequence of integers defined by

$$F_0^k = 0, F_1^k = 1, \text{ for } 1 \leq n \leq k,$$

and

$$F_n^k = F_{n-1}^k + F_{n-2}^k + \cdots + F_{n-k}^k, \text{ for } n \geq k+1.$$

The sequence  $\{F_n^2, n \geq 0\}$  is thus the ordinary Fibonacci sequence. For  $k \geq 3$ , the sequence  $\{F_n^k, n \geq 0\}$  is different from the Fibonacci sequence  $\{V_n^k, n \geq 0\}$  of order  $k$ , which is defined by

$$V_0^k = 0, V_1^k = 1, V_n^k = 2^{n-2}, \text{ for } 2 \leq n \leq k,$$

and

$$V_n^k = V_{n-1}^k + V_{n-2}^k + \cdots + V_{n-k}^k, \text{ for } n \geq k+1.$$

We also need the following integer sequence. For any integer  $k \geq 2$  and  $1 \leq m \leq k$ , let  $\{F_n^{k,m}, n \geq -k\}$  be a sequence defined by

$$F_n^{k,m} = 0, \text{ for } n \leq 0,$$

$$F_n^{k,m} = 2^{n-1}, \text{ for } 1 \leq n \leq m,$$

and

$$F_n^{k,m} = F_{n-1}^{k,m} + F_{n-2}^{k,m} + \cdots + F_{n-k}^{k,m}, \text{ for } n \geq m+1.$$

It is easy to see that, for any integer  $k \geq 1$ , the sequence  $\{F_n^{k,1}, n \geq 0\}$  is precisely the Fibonacci sequence of order  $k$ , i.e.,  $F_n^{k,1} = V_n^k$ . By induction, it can be shown that, for any  $k < n$ ,

$$\sum_{m=1}^k F_{n-k}^{k,m} = F_n^k.$$

For any fixed  $k \geq 2$  and  $n \geq 0$ , one can obtain multinomial coefficients  $c_{n,j}^k, 0 \leq j \leq (k-1)n+1$ , by expanding the expression

$$(1 + x + x^2 + \cdots + x^{k-1})^n,$$

and obtain the corresponding (generalized) Pascal triangle (see [4], [5], and [6]). For convenience, we set  $c_{n,j}^k = 0$ , for  $j \leq -1$  and  $j \geq (k-1)n+2$ . For  $k=2$ , one has binary coefficients and the Pascal triangle. For  $k=3$ , one has trinomial coefficients  $c_{n,j}^3$  and the corresponding generalized Pascal triangle, as shown in Figure 1.

One can draw diagonals in the triangle, and see that the sums of numbers between parallel lines are precisely the 3rd-order Fibonacci numbers  $V_n^3$ , just

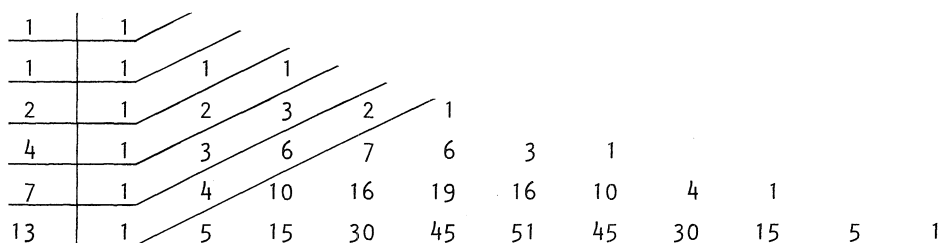


# ON FIBONACCI $k$ -ARY TREES

as in the case  $k = 2$  [1, p. 245]. In general, by an argument similar to that in [1, p. 246], one has the following relation between Fibonacci numbers  $V_n^k$  and multinomial coefficients  $c_{n,j}^k$ :

$$V_{n+1}^k = \sum_{j=0}^{\lfloor n-n/k \rfloor} c_{n-j,j}^k,$$

where  $\lfloor \cdot \rfloor$  indicates the largest integer function.



# ON FIBONACCI $k$ -ARY TREES

For any  $k \geq 2$ , a  $k$ -ary tree is a tree with each internal node containing exactly  $k$  ordered sons. We now specify branch costs of a  $k$ -ary tree. We will assume that each left-most branch has unit cost 1, each second-to-the-left branch has cost 2, ..., and each right-most branch has cost  $k$ . The cost  $a_i$  of a node  $i$  is the sum of costs of the branches from the root to this node. If the path from the root to a node has  $\ell$  branches, the node is said to be at level  $\ell$ . The average cost of a tree  $T$  is defined by

$$s = \sum_{j=1}^m a_j / m,$$

where  $m$  is the number of terminal nodes in  $T$ , and the summation is over all the terminal nodes in  $T$ . As in the case  $k = 2$  (see [2]), one can see that if a  $k$ -ary tree has  $n$  internal nodes, then it has  $(k-1)n + 1$  terminal nodes. It is easy to verify the following lemma.

**Lemma 1:** In a  $k$ -ary tree, let  $a_i$  be the cost of the terminal node  $i$ , and let  $b_j$  be the cost of the internal node  $j$ . Then

$$s = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{(k-1)n+1} a_i}{(k-1)n+1} = \frac{(k-1) \sum_{j=1}^n b_j + nk(k+1)/2}{(k-1)n+1}.$$

As was stated in [7], one can construct an optimal  $k$ -ary tree in the sense of minimum average cost as follows: Suppose that an optimal  $k$ -ary tree with  $(k-1)(n-1) + 1$  terminal nodes is given. To obtain an optimal  $k$ -ary tree with  $(k-1)n + 1$  terminal nodes, one can split a terminal node of minimum cost in  $T$  to produce  $k$  new terminal nodes. This can be verified by using Lemma 1, just as was done in the case  $k = 2$  in [2].

It is obvious that each tree  $T_n^k$  is a  $k$ -ary tree, and that it has  $F_n^k$  terminal nodes. As in the case  $k = 2$  in [2], we have the following lemma.

**Lemma 2:** Each Fibonacci tree  $T_n^k$ ,  $n \geq k+1$ , has exactly  $F_{n-k}^{k,j}$  terminal nodes of cost  $n-j$ , where  $1 \leq j \leq k \leq n-1$ .

**Proof:** The proof is by induction on  $n$ . The tree  $T_{k+1}^k$  has  $k$  terminal nodes, and it has exactly 1 ( $= F_1^{k,j}$ ) terminal node of cost  $k+1-j$ , where  $1 \leq j \leq k$ . Now, we assume that the Lemma holds for all  $n$ ,  $k+1 \leq n \leq N$ , where  $N \geq k+1$  is a fixed integer. The tree  $T_{N+1}^k$  has  $k$  subtrees  $T_N^k, T_{N-1}^k, \dots, T_{N-k+1}^k$ , from left to right. The number of terminal nodes of cost  $N+1-j$  in  $T_{N+1}^k$  is, for  $k \geq j \geq N+1-k$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} F_{N-k}^{k,j} + F_{N-k-1}^{k,j} + \dots + F_1^{k,j} + 1 &= 2^{N-k-1} + 2^{N-k-2} + \dots + 1 + 1 \\ &= 2^{N-k} = F_{N+1-k}^{k,j}, \end{aligned}$$

and for  $j < N+1-k$ , the number is

$$F_{N-k}^{k,j} + F_{N-k-1}^{k,j} + \dots + F_{N-2k+1}^{k,j} = F_{N+1-k}^{k,j}.$$

This completes the proof.

With the branch costs specified as above, for any fixed  $k \geq 2$ , we have the following theorem.

**Theorem 1:** The average cost of a Fibonacci tree  $T_n^k$  of order  $n$  is

$$s_n^k = (n - 1) + \left[ \sum_{j=2}^k (j - 1) F_{n-k}^{k,j} \right] / F_n^k,$$

and it is optimal among  $k$ -ary trees for each  $n \geq k + 1$ .

**Proof:** By Lemma 2, for  $n \geq k + 1$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} s_n^k &= \sum_{j=1}^k (n - j) F_{n-k}^{k,j} / F_n^k \\ &= (n - 1) \sum_{j=1}^k F_{n-k}^{k,j} / F_n^k - \sum_{j=1}^k (j - 1) F_{n-k}^{k,j} / F_n^k \\ &= (n - 1) - \sum_{j=2}^k (j - 1) F_{n-k}^{k,j} / F_n^k. \end{aligned}$$

If  $k = 2$ , one has

$$s_n^2 = (n - 1) - F_{n-2}^{2,2} / F_n^2 = (n - 2) + (F_n^2 - F_{n-1}^2) / F_n^2 = (n - 2) + F_{n-2}^2 / F_n^2,$$

as was shown in Theorem 3 of [2].

For the second assertion, by the rule for constructing optimal  $k$ -ary trees mentioned above, we need to show that, by splitting all the terminal nodes of cost  $(n - k)$  in  $T_n^k$ , we can obtain  $T_{n+1}^k$ . As in the proof in [2], we proceed by induction on  $n$ . The claim clearly holds for  $n = k + 1$ . We assume it holds for all  $n$ ,  $k + 1 \leq n \leq N - 1$ , where  $N \geq k + 2$  is a fixed integer. Since the leftmost subtree of  $T_N^k$  is  $T_{N-1}^k$ , by the induction hypothesis, after splitting all the terminal nodes of cost  $(N - k)$  in this subtree, we obtain  $T_N^k$ . A similar argument applies to all the remaining  $(k - 1)$  subtrees of  $T_N^k$ . Therefore, the resulting tree has  $k$  ordered subtrees  $T_N^k, T_{N-1}^k, \dots, T_{N-k+1}^k$ , and so it is  $T_{N+1}^k$ . This completes the proof.

Our next result generalizes a result in [3] which deals with the number of terminal nodes at each level of a Fibonacci tree.

**Theorem 2:** At level  $\ell$  in a Fibonacci tree  $T_n^k$ ,  $n \geq k + 1$ , there are  $c_{\ell, n-k-\ell}^k$  nodes with label  $p_1$ , and  $c_{\ell-1, n-k-\ell}^k + c_{\ell-1, n-k-\ell-1}^k + \dots + c_{\ell-1, n-k-\ell-(k-2)}^k$  nodes with label  $p_j$ ,  $2 \leq j \leq k$ .

**Proof:** The assertion holds for  $n = k + 1$ . We assume that it holds for some  $n \geq k + 1$ , and then prove it for  $n + 1$ . By hypothesis, there are

$$c_{\ell-1, n-k-\ell+1}^k$$

nodes with label  $p_1$  in  $T_n^k$  at level  $\ell - 1$ , and

$$c_{\ell-1, n-k-\ell}^k + \dots + c_{\ell-1, n-k-\ell-(k-2)}^k$$

nodes with label  $p_2$  in  $T_n^k$  at level  $\ell$ . Thus, the number of nodes with label  $p_1$  in  $T_{n+1}^k$  at level  $\ell$  is

$$c_{\ell-1, n-k-\ell+1}^k + c_{\ell-1, n-k-\ell}^k + \dots + c_{\ell-1, n-k-\ell-(k-2)}^k = c_{\ell, n+1-k-\ell}^k.$$

# ON FIBONACCI $k$ -ARY TREES

Similarly, one can compute the number of nodes with label  $p_j$ ,  $j \geq 2$ , in  $T_{n+1}^k$  at level  $\ell$ . This completes the proof.

One can see from Theorem 2 that the number of terminal nodes at level  $\ell$  in the tree  $T_n^k$  is

$$\sum_{j=1}^k j c_{\ell-1, n-2k-\ell+j}^k,$$

and since  $T_n^k$  has  $F_n^k$  terminal nodes,

$$F_n^k = \sum_{\ell=1}^{n-k} \sum_{j=1}^k j c_{\ell-1, n-2k-\ell+j}^k \text{ for } n \geq k+1.$$

Finally, one can see that the trees  $T_n^k$  and  $T_n^2$  have average costs  $s_n^k$  and  $s_n^2$ , respectively. Since the characteristic equations of the recurrence relations for the sequences  $\{F_n^k, n \geq 0\}$  and  $\{F_n^{k,j}, n \geq 0\}$  are the same, and have exactly one root  $x_1$  satisfying  $|x_1| > 1$ , and since the coefficients of the  $n^{\text{th}}$  power of  $x_1$  in the expressions of  $F_n^k$  and  $F_n^{k,j}$  are clearly nonzero, the ratio  $F_n^{k,j}/F_n^k$  converges to a finite limit as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . Using Theorem 1, one has the limit

$$s_n^k/s_n^2 \rightarrow 1 \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

On the other hand, the trees  $T_n^k$  and  $T_n^2$  have  $F_n^k$  and  $F_n^2$  terminal nodes, respectively. For any  $k \geq 3$ , one has the limit

$$F_n^k/F_n^2 \rightarrow \infty \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

## REFERENCES

1. G. Berman & K. D. Fryer. *Introduction to combinatorics*. New York: Academic Press, 1972.
2. Y. Horibe. "An Entropy View of Fibonacci Trees." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 20, no. 2 (1982):168-178.
3. Y. Horibe. "Notes on Fibonacci Trees and Their Optimality." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 21, no. 2 (1983):118-128.
4. C. Smith & V. E. Hoggatt, Jr. "Generating Functions of Central Values in Generalized Pascal Triangles." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 17, no. 1 (1979): 58-67.
5. C. Smith & V. E. Hoggatt, Jr. "A Study of the Maximal Values in Pascal's Quadrinomial Triangle." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 17, no. 4 (1979):264-269.
6. C. Smith & V. E. Hoggatt, Jr. "Roots of (H-L)/15 Recurrence Equations in Generalized Pascal Triangles." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 18, no. 1 (1980): 36-42.
7. B. Varn. "Optimal Variable Length Codes (Arbitrary Symbol Cost and Equal Code Word Probability)." *Information and Control* 19 (1971):289-301.

◆◆◆◆

# FIBONACCI NUMBERS AS EXPECTED VALUES IN A GAME OF CHANCE

DEAN S. CLARK

*University of Rhode Island, Kingston, RI 02881*

*(Submitted July 1984)*

Our objective in this note is to introduce an interesting game of chance and show that, when the game is unfair, its expected value is (plus or minus) a Fibonacci number. We prove this in an elegant and unexpected way, with ramifications going beyond the Fibonacci numbers.

## 1. THE GAME

We assign five payoffs to the vertices of a pentagon. Three of these are \$0, the remaining two are  $\$2^N$  and  $\$-2^N$ , where  $N$  is a fixed positive integer (preferably large). A ball moves clockwise around the five positions, and where it stops determines the payoff. The ball is propelled by coin tossing. When a fair coin shows a head, the ball moves one position clockwise. When the coin shows a tail, the ball does not move. The coin is tossed  $N$  times. The distribution of the payoffs, the starting position of the ball, and the value of  $N$  are immaterial to the mathematics—the Fibonacci numbers are here no matter what. As for the gambler's fortune, that is another story.

The expected value of the game is easily shown to have the form

$$\sum_j \left( \binom{N}{5j+p} - \binom{N}{5j+q} \right), \quad 0 \leq p, q \leq 4, \quad (1)$$

but these integers are not immediately recognizable as positive or negative, let alone Fibonacci numbers.

## 2. GENERALIZED BINOMIAL COEFFICIENTS

The following is a well-known identity (see, e.g., [1], Chap. 3, Prob. 29).

$$\binom{n}{0}_{F_0} + \binom{n}{1}_{F_1} + \binom{n}{2}_{F_2} + \cdots + \binom{n}{n}_{F_n} = F_{2n}, \quad (2)$$

where  $\{F_j\}_{j \geq 0} = \{0, 1, 1, 2, \dots\}$  is the Fibonacci sequence. There are several ways to prove (2), but here is a way which gets to the heart of the relation between the Fibonacci numbers and the binomial coefficients. Let

$$\left\{ \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right\}^* = F_{2n+j}.$$

Observe that

$$\left\{ \begin{matrix} n+1 \\ j \end{matrix} \right\}^* = F_{2n+2+j} = F_{2n+j+1} + F_{2n+j} = \left\{ \begin{matrix} n \\ j+1 \end{matrix} \right\}^* + \left\{ \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right\}^*. \quad (3)$$

Except for the advanced, as opposed to retarded  $j$ -argument, (3) states the Pascal recurrence for the coefficients  $\left\{ \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right\}^*$ . Because of the close connection to the binomial coefficients, there must be a precise statement relating the two. Leaving the particular choice of  $\left\{ \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right\}^*$  values behind, but retaining recurrence

(5), below, this is

$$\sum_j \binom{n}{j} \left\{ \begin{matrix} r \\ j+i \end{matrix} \right\} = \left\{ \begin{matrix} n+r \\ i \end{matrix} \right\}, \quad (4)$$

a formula [2] easily proved by induction on  $n$  (fixed  $r \geq 0$  and  $-\infty < i < +\infty$ ). Setting  $\left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} = \left\{ \begin{matrix} k \\ j \end{matrix} \right\}^*$  and  $r = i = 0$  in (4) yields (2).

The lesson to be learned from this is two-fold. First, (4) depends only on the Pascal-like recurrence

$$\left\{ \begin{matrix} n+1 \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} = \left\{ \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} + \left\{ \begin{matrix} n \\ j+1 \end{matrix} \right\} \quad (5)$$

so (2) holds for *any* sequence satisfying the Fibonacci recurrence (e.g., the Lucas numbers). We are motivated to look for more *generalized binomial coefficients* (gbc's) among the Fibonacci numbers, and find them easily:

$$\left\{ \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} \text{ could be } F_{m+n-j}, (-1)^{n+j} 2^j F_{m-3n+j}, 2^{-n-j} (-1)^j F_{m-2n+j}, \\ (-1)^{n+j} F_{m-n+j}, 2^{-n-j} F_{m+2n-j}, 2^j F_{m+3n+j}, (-1)^j F_{m-2n-j}, \dots$$

Secondly, since the initial conditions

$$\left\{ \begin{matrix} 0 \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} = c_j$$

are free for us to choose, rewriting (4) as

$$\left\{ \begin{matrix} n \\ 0 \end{matrix} \right\} = \sum_j \binom{n}{j} c_j$$

gives us a single coefficient which computes entire binomial sums.

Thus, the idea of a generalized binomial coefficient is itself worth generalizing. Let

$$\left[ \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right] \equiv (-1)^n \left\{ \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right\} \text{ and } \left\langle \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right\rangle \equiv \left[ \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right] - \inf_k \left[ \begin{matrix} n \\ k \end{matrix} \right], \quad n \in \mathbb{N}, j, k \in \mathbb{Z}. \quad (6)$$

To assure that the gbc's  $\left\langle \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right\rangle$  are well defined, we need only require

$$\sup_k \left| \left\{ \begin{matrix} 0 \\ k \end{matrix} \right\} \right| < +\infty.$$

### 3. THE GAME AND THE gbc's

By answering some natural questions about how the coefficients  $\left\{ \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right\}$ ,  $\left[ \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right]$ , and  $\left\langle \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right\rangle$  are related, we get immediate answers about the connection between the roulette-like game of Section 1 and the Fibonacci numbers. For example, what type of recurrence do the  $\left\langle \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right\rangle$  satisfy? Given

$$\left\{ \left\langle \begin{matrix} m \\ k \end{matrix} \right\rangle \right\}_{\substack{0 \leq m \leq n \\ -\infty < k < +\infty}},$$

how do we recover  $\left\{ \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right\}$ ? The answers are in

**Theorem 1:** Let  $\left( \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right)$  denote the binomial coefficients, and  $\left\{ \begin{matrix} n \\ j \end{matrix} \right\}$  denote any coefficients satisfying (5),  $n = 0, 1, \dots; -\infty < j < +\infty$ . With the convention

$$\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} 0 \\ j \end{smallmatrix} \right\} = \left[ \begin{smallmatrix} 0 \\ j \end{smallmatrix} \right] = \left\langle \begin{smallmatrix} 0 \\ j \end{smallmatrix} \right\rangle,$$

define  $\left[ \begin{smallmatrix} n \\ j \end{smallmatrix} \right]$  and  $\left\langle \begin{smallmatrix} n \\ j \end{smallmatrix} \right\rangle$  by (6). Then

$$\left\langle \begin{smallmatrix} n+1 \\ j \end{smallmatrix} \right\rangle = \lambda_{n+1} - \left\langle \begin{smallmatrix} n \\ j \end{smallmatrix} \right\rangle - \left\langle \begin{smallmatrix} n \\ j+1 \end{smallmatrix} \right\rangle, \quad (7)$$

$$\text{with } \lambda_{n+1} = \sup_k \left( \left\langle \begin{smallmatrix} n \\ k \end{smallmatrix} \right\rangle + \left\langle \begin{smallmatrix} n \\ k+1 \end{smallmatrix} \right\rangle \right);$$

$$\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} n \\ j \end{smallmatrix} \right\} = (-1)^n \left\langle \begin{smallmatrix} n \\ j \end{smallmatrix} \right\rangle + \sum_{k=1}^n (-1)^{k-1} 2^{n-k} \lambda_k; \quad (8)$$

$$\sum_{j=0}^n \left( \begin{smallmatrix} n \\ j \end{smallmatrix} \right) \left\langle \begin{smallmatrix} r \\ j+i \end{smallmatrix} \right\rangle = (-1)^n \left\langle \begin{smallmatrix} n+r \\ i \end{smallmatrix} \right\rangle + \sum_{k=1}^n (-1)^{k-1} 2^{n-k} \lambda_{r+k}. \quad (9)$$

**Outline of Proof:** A straightforward application of the definitions yields (7).

To obtain (8), let  $S_0 = 0$  and

$$S_n = \begin{cases} \inf_k \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} n \\ k \end{smallmatrix} \right\}, & n \text{ even} \\ \sup_k \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} n \\ k \end{smallmatrix} \right\}, & n \text{ odd, } n > 0. \end{cases}$$

It follows that  $S_n = \left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} n \\ j \end{smallmatrix} \right\} + (-1)^{n+1} \left\langle \begin{smallmatrix} n \\ j \end{smallmatrix} \right\rangle$  for all  $j$ , and

$$S_{n+1} = 2S_n + (-1)^n \lambda_{n+1}. \quad (10)$$

Solving (10) gives

$$S_n = \sum_{k=1}^n (-1)^{k-1} 2^{n-k} \lambda_k$$

and (8).

To obtain (9), substitute (8) with the appropriate indices in (4). ■

Here are the important consequences of Theorem 1: Relation (7) is an *algorithm* for constructing an array of gbc's  $\left\langle \begin{smallmatrix} n \\ j \end{smallmatrix} \right\rangle$ . Consideration of (1) shows that we will want to take

$$\dots 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0 \dots \quad (11)$$

as our initial row. Secondly, setting  $r = 0$  in (9) and choosing  $i$  appropriately,

$$\sum_j \left( \left( \begin{smallmatrix} N \\ 5j+p \end{smallmatrix} \right) - \left( \begin{smallmatrix} N \\ 5j+q \end{smallmatrix} \right) \right) = (-1)^N \left( \left\langle \begin{smallmatrix} N \\ -p \end{smallmatrix} \right\rangle - \left\langle \begin{smallmatrix} N \\ -q \end{smallmatrix} \right\rangle \right). \quad (12)$$

The implication is that to know the expected value of our game we need only construct the array of gbc's  $\left\langle \begin{smallmatrix} n \\ j \end{smallmatrix} \right\rangle$  with initial row (11). Here is where the Fibonacci numbers appear.

## FIBONACCI NUMBERS AS EXPECTED VALUES IN A GAME OF CHANCE

[illegible]

A complete description of array (13) is the concern of

**Theorem 2:** Array (13) consists of rows of repeating blocks

$$B_n = \left( \langle \begin{smallmatrix} n \\ j \end{smallmatrix} \rangle \right)_{j=0}^4$$

which (modulo a shift) have the form

$$M_n = (F_{n+1}, F_n, 0, 0, F_n). \quad (14)$$

Let  $R_k(\cdot)$  denote the operator which shifts the elements of a vector  $k$  steps to the right with wraparound. Then,

$$B_n = R_{2n \pmod{5}} M_n, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots \quad (15)$$

Outline of Proof: The fact that the blocks have the form  $(b_n, a_n, 0, 0, a_n)$ , where eventually  $0 < a_n < b_n$ , is a simple observation, as is the right-shifting action described by (15).

The fact that the  $a_n$  and  $b_n$  are the Fibonacci numbers follows from the basic recurrence (7). The latter implies

$$b_{n+1} = b_n + a_n \quad (16)$$

$$a_{n+1} = b_{n+1} - a_n,$$

and (16) implies, in turn, that  $b_{n+2} = b_{n+1} + b_n$ ,  $a_{n+2} = a_{n+1} + a_n$ . With the initial conditions, we have  $b_n = F_{n+1}$ ,  $a_n = F_n$ . ■

**Corollary:** The expected value of the game of Section 1 is zero or (plus or minus) a Fibonacci number.

**Proof:** Consider (12) in conjunction with (13), (14), (15). The difference of any two elements in (14) is zero or (plus or minus) a Fibonacci number. ■

#### 4. EXTENSIONS

A natural generalization of the game is to assign payoffs to the vertices of an  $n$ -gon and ask about the analogues of the Fibonacci numbers in this case. This question is addressed in [3], where we generalize results of Hoggatt and Alexanderson [4].



# FIBONACCI NUMBERS AS EXPECTED VALUES IN A GAME OF CHANCE

## REFERENCES

1. D. I. A. Cohen. *Basic Techniques of Combinatorial Theory*. New York: Wiley, 1978.
2. D. S. Clark. "On Some Abstract Properties of Binomial Coefficients." *Am. Math. Monthly* **89** (1982):433-443.
3. D. S. Clark. "Combinatorial Sums  $\sum_j \binom{n}{mj+q}$  Associated with Chebyshev Polynomials." *J. Approx. Theory* **43** (1985):377-382.
4. V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., & G. L. Alexanderson. "Sums of Partition Sets in Generalized Pascal Triangles, I." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* **14** (1976):117-125.

◆◆◆◆

# SEQUENCES GENERATED BY MULTIPLE REFLECTIONS

IAN BRUCE

*St. Peter's Collegiate School, Stonyfell, S. Australia*  
(Submitted September 1984)

1. We consider the situation of a light ray multiply reflected by a set of parallel glass plates in contact. The ray is assumed to be totally reflected or transmitted at any interface. A sequence is formed by considering the number of distinct ways a ray can be reflected  $n$  times before emerging. It is well known that this is the Fibonacci sequence if only two plates are present [1]. Several aspects of the general case for  $k$  plates have already been considered: Moser and Wyman [2] place a plane mirror behind the stack of plates, while Hoggatt and Junge [3] tackle the above situation. We will show how the enumerating matrices of [2] and [3] are related, and derive a procedure for evaluating the asymptotic form of the general sequence. In addition, some Fibonacci-like relations of the general sequence are shown.

2. We will restrict ourselves to the cases of two and three plates in this section, with generalizations being obvious to  $k$  plates. A scheme for counting the reflections of a given order is shown in Diagrams 1 and 2. A string of digits is used to enumerate the labelled interfaces at which reflections occur.

2 plates: (2, 3), (21, 31, 32), (212, 213, 312, 313, 323), ... (1)

3 plates: (2, 3, 4), (21, 31, 32, 41, 42, 43), (212, 213, 224, ...) (2)

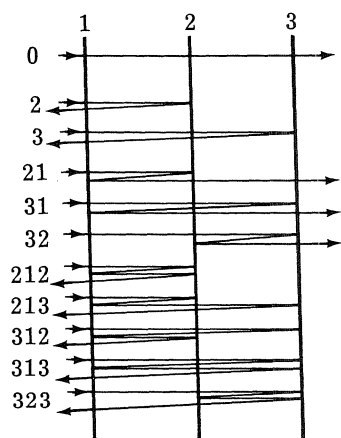


Diagram 1. Some of the labelled reflections from two sheets of glass.

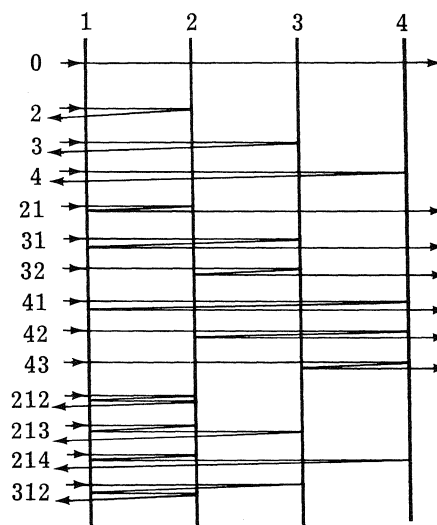


Diagram 2. Labelled reflections from three sheets of glass.

# SEQUENCES GENERATED BY MULTIPLE REFLECTIONS

The reflections can now be shown without recourse to drawing them. All the reflections of a given order are placed in parentheses above. The number of reflections of a given order that end on the same final interface are now counted, and arranged in a sequence whose non-zero members are non-decreasing. The zeros arise, of course, because the ray must finally pass out through the first or last face.

The sequence that arises from (1) is:

$$0, 1, 1, 0, 1, 2, 0, 2, 3, 0, 3, 5, 0, 5, 8, 0, 8, 13, 0, 13, 21, 0, 21, 34, 0, \dots, \quad (3)$$

which is seen to contain the Fibonacci sequence. The sequence that arises from (2) is:

$$0, 1, 1, 1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 0, 3, 5, 6, 0, 6, 11, 14, 0, 14, 25, 31, 0, \dots \quad (4)$$

Now, (3) is the sequence generated by the starting conditions:

$$r_0 = 0, r_1 = r_2 = 1, \quad (5)$$

together with the recurrence relations:

$$r_{3n} = 0, r_{3n+1} = r_{3n-1}, r_{3n+2} = r_{3n-1} + r_{3n-2}, \text{ for } n \geq 1. \quad (6)$$

In the same way, (4) is produced by

$$r_0 = 0, r_1 = r_2 = r_3 = 1, \quad (7)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} r_{4n} &= 0, r_{4n+1} = r_{4n-1}, r_{4n+2} = r_{4n-1} + r_{4n-2}, \\ r_{4n+3} &= r_{4n-1} + r_{4n-2} + r_{4n-3}, \text{ for } n \geq 1. \end{aligned} \quad (8)$$

Some simple sequence properties are now listed for the sequence (2). These are all readily proven from the definition (8):

$$r_1 + r_5 + r_9 + \dots + r_{4n+1} = r_{4n+2}; \quad (9)$$

$$r_3 + r_7 + r_{11} + \dots + r_{4n+3} = r_{4n+6} - 2; \quad (10)$$

$$r_2 + r_6 + r_{10} + \dots + r_{4n+2} = r_{4n+6} - r_{4n+2} - 1; \quad (11)$$

$$r_{4n}^2 + r_{4n+1}^2 + r_{4n+2}^2 + r_{4n+3}^2 = r_{2(4n+3)+1}. \quad (12)$$

In establishing (11), the following result is needed:

$$r_{4n+6} - r_{4n+2} = r_{4n+2} + r_{4n-3}. \quad (13)$$

We can use these partial sums to give the sum of all the reflections up to order  $n$ :

$$\sum_{i=1}^{4n} r_i = r_{4n-2} + 2 \cdot r_{4n+2} - r_{4n-6} - 2. \quad (14)$$

3. We consider the general case to obtain a procedure for evaluating terms like those on the right-hand side of (14). Note first that the non-zero terms

# SEQUENCES GENERATED BY MULTIPLE REFLECTIONS

in the sequence can be generated in the following matrix notation:

$$\begin{bmatrix} r_{nk+1} \\ r_{nk+2} \\ \vdots \\ r_{(n+1)k-1} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 1 & 1 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} r_{(n-1)k+1} \\ r_{(n-1)k+2} \\ \vdots \\ r_{nk-1} \end{bmatrix}, \quad (15)$$

or

$$r_n = Ar_{n-1} = A^n r_0, \quad (16)$$

easily by induction, where  $r_0$  is the starting conditions column vector. As is pointed out in [2], this approach can only be made viable by making use of the eigenvalues ( $\lambda$ ) and their corresponding eigenvectors ( $u$ ) as follows:

Repeated application of  $A$  to the eigenvector  $u$  gives

$$Au = \lambda u, A^2u = \lambda^2 u, \dots, A^n u = \lambda^n u. \quad (17)$$

The solution of (16) follows on expressing  $r_0$  as a linear combination of the eigenvectors of  $A$ . However, [2] considers the case with the mirror, which involves a different enumerating matrix. This means that all the reflections of odd order are unaffected by the mirror because they proceed to the left in any case, while a reflection of even order is added to the next odd order. The matrix that does this is  $A^2$ , where  $A$  is defined as in (15).

We now proceed to find the eigenvalues of  $A$  from the determinant of order  $k$ :

$$D_k(\lambda) = |A - \lambda I| = 0. \quad (18)$$

Now, [3] provides the useful recurrence relation:

$$D_k(\lambda) = (2\lambda^2 - 1)D_{k-2}(\lambda) - \lambda^4 D_{k-4}(\lambda). \quad (19)$$

If we assume a solution to (18) of the form  $D_k(\lambda) = P^k$ , where  $P$  is a polynomial in  $\lambda$ , independent of  $k$ , then we find that

$$D_k(\lambda) = c_1 a^k + c_2 b^k + c_3 a^k \cdot (-1)^k + c_4 b^k \cdot (-1)^k, \quad (20)$$

where

$$P = \pm((2\lambda^2 - 1) \pm \Delta)^{1/2} = \pm a, \pm b,$$

where  $a$  is the root with the positive discriminant and  $b$  that with the negative discriminant, while

$$\Delta = (1 - 4\lambda^2)^{1/2}. \quad (21)$$

The coefficients  $c_i$  ( $i = 1, 2, 3, 4$ ), which are independent of  $k$ , can be found using the four characteristic equations of lowest order, i.e.,

$$\begin{aligned} D_0(\lambda) &= 1, D_1(\lambda) = -\lambda + 1, D_2(\lambda) = \lambda^2 - \lambda - 1, \text{ and} \\ D_3(\lambda) &= \lambda^3 + 2\lambda^2 + \lambda - 1, \end{aligned} \quad (22)$$

as follows:

# SEQUENCES GENERATED BY MULTIPLE REFLECTIONS

When  $k$  is even,

$$D_k(\lambda) = 0 = (c_1 + c_3)a^k + (c_2 + c_4)b^k, \quad (23)$$

leading to

$$(1 + 2\lambda - \Delta)/(1 + 2\lambda + \Delta) = ((2\lambda^2 - 1 - \Delta)/(2\lambda^2 - 1 + \Delta))^{k/2}, \quad (24)$$

on making use of  $D_0(\lambda)$  and  $D_2(\lambda)$ .

We can readily solve (24) on making the substitutions

$$\lambda = \frac{1}{2} \sin \theta = t/(1 + t^2), \text{ where } t = \tan \theta/2, \quad (25)$$

giving:

$$t^{2k+1} = 1, \text{ with solutions } t = e^{\frac{\pm 2n\pi i}{2k+1}}, \quad n = 0, 1, \dots, k. \quad (26)$$

Hence, the eigenvalues are given by

$$\lambda = \frac{1}{2} \sec(2n\pi/2k + 1), \quad n = 1, 2, \dots, k. \quad (27)$$

When  $k$  is odd, a similar argument leads to solving

$$t^{2k+1} = -1, \quad (28)$$

giving the eigenvalues:

$$\lambda = \frac{1}{2} \sec(2n + 1)\pi/2k + 1. \quad (29)$$

We are now in a position to evaluate (16), which we will briefly show for the case  $k = 2$ : From (27), the eigenvalues are

$$\lambda_1 = \frac{1}{2} \sec 2\pi/5 \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_2 = \frac{1}{2} \sec 4\pi/5,$$

with the corresponding eigenvectors

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ t \end{pmatrix}, \quad \begin{pmatrix} t \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad (30)$$

on writing  $t = \frac{1}{2} \sec 2\pi/5$ .

On expressing  $r_0 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$  in terms of the eigenvectors, and on using (16), we find:

$$\begin{pmatrix} r_{3n+1} \\ r_{3n+2} \end{pmatrix} = A^2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{2t+1}{t+2} \cdot t^{n-1} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ t \end{pmatrix} + \frac{t-2}{t+2} \cdot t^{-n+1} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} t \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}; \quad (31)$$

$k \geq 2$  values are best tackled numerically, as the algebra becomes excessive.

## SEQUENCES GENERATED BY MULTIPLE REFLECTIONS

### REFERENCES

1. L. Moser & M. Wyman. Problem B-6. *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 1, no. 1 (1963): 74.
2. L. Moser & M. Wyman. "Multiple Reflections." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 11, no. 3 (1973):302-306.
3. B. Junge & V. E. Hoggatt, Jr. "Polynomials Arising from Reflections Across Multiple Plates." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 11, no. 3 (1973):285-291.
4. V. E. Hoggatt, Jr., & Marjorie Bicknell-Johnson. "Reflections Across Two and Three Glass Plates." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 17, no. 2 (1979):118-141.

◆◆◆◆

# A RELATION FOR THE PRIME DISTRIBUTION FUNCTION

PAUL S. BRUCKMAN

4933 Papaya Drive, Fair Oaks, CA 95628

(Submitted October 1984)

In this paper, we obtain an interesting duality relationship between the prime distribution function ( $\pi$ -function) and another, less well-known, number theoretic function. The domain of definition throughout is the set of natural numbers.

We recall the definition of the  $\pi$ -function:

$$\pi(n) = \sum_{p \leq n} 1, \text{ which counts the number of primes } \leq n. \quad (1)$$

Also, we recall the Möbius function, defined as follows:

$$\mu(n) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } n = 1; \\ 0, & \text{if } n \text{ is divisible by a square (or higher power)} \\ & \text{of a prime;} \\ (-1)^k, & \text{if } n \text{ is the product of } k \text{ distinct primes.} \end{cases} \quad (2)$$

We also indicate, without proof, a well-known relationship satisfied by the Möbius function:

$$\sum_{d|n} \mu(d) = \delta_{1n} = \begin{cases} 1, & n = 1, \\ 0, & n \neq 1, \end{cases} \quad (3)$$

where the sum is taken over all divisors  $d$  of  $n$ .

We now introduce another function  $\lambda(n)$  which seeks to enumerate all *powers* of primes (including first powers) so that such powers are  $\leq n$ . We may count  $\lambda(n)$  by letting  $k$  vary from 1, 2, 3, ... and counting the acceptable  $k^{\text{th}}$  powers of primes. For a given prime  $p$ , the inequality  $p^k \leq n$  is equivalent to

$$k \leq \frac{\log n}{\log p},$$

and is satisfied by

$$k = 1, 2, 3, \dots, \left\lfloor \frac{\log n}{\log p} \right\rfloor, \text{ i.e., for } \left\lfloor \frac{\log n}{\log p} \right\rfloor \text{ values.}$$

Summing over all  $p$ , we thus obtain:

$$\lambda(n) = \sum_{p \leq n} \left\lfloor \frac{\log n}{\log p} \right\rfloor. \quad (4)$$

An alternative expression for  $\lambda(n)$  can be obtained by noting that  $p^k \leq n$  is equivalent to  $p \leq [n^{1/k}]$ . The component of  $\lambda(n)$  that counts all  $k^{\text{th}}$  powers of primes thus counts all primes  $p \leq [n^{1/k}]$ , and must therefore equal  $\pi([n^{1/k}])$ . Summing over all possible  $k$ , we therefore obtain the relationship:

$$\lambda(n) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \pi([n^{1/k}]). \quad (5)$$

# A RELATION FOR THE PRIME DISTRIBUTION FUNCTION

Note that the "infinite" series in (5) actually terminates since, for sufficiently large  $k$ ,  $[n^{1/k}] = 1$  for all  $n$ , and  $\pi(1) = 0$ .

The relationship in (5) may be inverted to yield an expression for  $\pi(n)$  in terms of  $\lambda$ , valued at varying arguments. This expression is as follows:

$$\pi(n) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \mu(k) \lambda([n^{1/k}]). \quad (6)$$

A comment similar to that following (5) applies here, too, since  $\lambda(1) = 0$ .

To prove (6), we resort to a pair of seemingly unrelated lemmas.

**Lemma 1:** Given positive integers  $m$ ,  $n$ , and  $r$ , let

$$\chi(m|n) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } m|n; \\ 0, & \text{if } m \nmid n. \end{cases}$$

Define  $r \times r$  matrices  $A_r = (a_{ij}^{(r)})$  and  $B_r = (b_{ij}^{(r)})$  as follows:

$$a_{ij}^{(r)} = \chi(i|j); \quad (8)$$

$$b_{ij}^{(r)} = \chi(i|j) \mu(j/i), \quad (i, j = 1, 2, 3, \dots, r). \quad (9)$$

Then

$$A_r B_r = I_r, \text{ i.e., } B_r = A_r^{-1}. \quad (10)$$

**Proof of Lemma 1:** Let  $A_r B_r = C_r = (c_{ij}^{(r)})$ . Then

$$c_{ij}^{(r)} = \sum_{k=1}^r a_{ik}^{(r)} b_{kj}^{(r)} = \sum_{k=1}^r \chi(i|k) \chi(k|j) \mu(j/k).$$

Note that each term of this sum vanishes *unless*  $i|k|j$ , i.e., unless  $i|j$ . Thus,  $c_{ij}^{(r)} = 0$  if  $i \nmid j$ . Suppose now that  $i|j$ , and let  $j = id$ . Then

$$c_{ij}^{(r)} = \sum_{u=1}^{j/i} \chi(ui|j) \mu(j/ui) = \sum_{u=1}^d \chi(u|d) \mu(d/u) = \sum_{d_1|d} \mu(d_1) = \delta_{1d}$$

[using (3)]. Hence,

$$c_{ij}^{(r)} = \begin{cases} 1, & i = j, \\ 0, & i \neq j. \end{cases}$$

This is equivalent to  $C_r = I_r$ . Q.E.D.

**Lemma 2:** Suppose  $n$ ,  $a$ , and  $b$  are positive integers. Then

$$[[n^{1/a}]^{1/b}] = [n^{1/ab}]. \quad (11)$$

**Proof of Lemma 2:** Let  $u = [n^{1/a}]$ . Since  $n^{1/a} \geq 1$ , thus  $u \geq 1$ . Define the integer  $v \geq 2$  by:

$$1 \leq (v-1)^b \leq u < v^b - 1.$$



# A RELATION FOR THE PRIME DISTRIBUTION FUNCTION

Since  $n^{1/a} < u + 1 < v^b$ , thus  $n^{1/ab} < v$ , which implies  $[n^{1/ab}] \leq v - 1$ . However,  $v - 1 \leq u^{1/b} < (v^b - 1)^{1/b} < v$ , which implies  $[u^{1/b}] = v - 1$ ; therefore,

$$[n^{1/ab}] \leq [u^{1/b}]. \quad (12)$$

On the other hand,  $n^{1/a} \geq u \Rightarrow n^{1/ab} \geq u^{1/b}$ , which implies

$$[n^{1/ab}] \geq [u^{1/b}]. \quad (13)$$

It follows from (12) and (13) that

$$[n^{1/ab}] = [u^{1/b}], \quad (14)$$

which is equivalent to (11). Q.E.D.

The proof of (6) follows. Let  $f(k) = \pi([n^{1/k}])$ ,  $g(k) = \lambda([n^{1/k}])$ , assuming  $n$  is given. Applying Lemma 2 and (5) indefinitely, with  $n$  replaced successively by  $[n^{1/r}]$ ,  $r = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ , the following relationships are evident:

$$g(r) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} f(rk), \quad r = 1, 2, 3, \dots \quad (15)$$

Let us define the following vectors:

$$\mathbf{f}'_r = (f(1), f(2), \dots, f(r)), \quad \mathbf{g}'_r = (g(1), g(2), \dots, g(r)). \quad (16)$$

We may then transform (15) into matrix notation as follows:

$$\mathbf{g}_r = A_r \mathbf{f}_r. \quad (17)$$

Multiplying both sides of (17) by  $B_r$ , as given in Lemma 1, yields the desired inversion formula:

$$\mathbf{f}_r = B_r \mathbf{g}_r. \quad (18)$$

Converting (18) back to scalar notation, we obtain:

$$f(r) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \mu(k) g(rk). \quad (19).$$

Now, setting  $r = 1$  in (19) yields the desired result in (6). Q.E.D.

Lemma 1 is a very interesting result in its own right, and it provides the basis for the well-known technique of Möbius inversion, of which the dual relationships given in (5) and (6) are special cases.

Note that (6) provides an explicit expression for the prime distribution function, which is an important step in one of the most celebrated of unsolved problems in number theory, namely the discovery of an explicit formula for the  $n^{\text{th}}$  prime. Before giving vent to undue jubilation, however, it must be noted that the "explicit" expression given by (6) is in terms of another auxiliary number theoretic function, which is itself not readily found in terms of  $n$ . Therefore, the pair of relationships in (5) and (6) is apparently only of academic interest insofar as the great unsolved problem is concerned. It may come to pass, nevertheless, that some reader of this paper will find some use for these relationships toward the solution of this or other problem.

# A RELATION FOR THE PRIME DISTRIBUTION FUNCTION

We conclude this paper with a brief table of the first few values of the two functions studied herein.

$n$	$\pi(n)$	$\lambda(n)$
1	0	0
2	1	1
3	2	2
4	2	3
5	3	4
6	3	4
7	4	5
8	4	6
9	4	7
10	4	7
11	5	8
12	5	8
13	6	9
14	6	9
15	6	9
16	6	10
17	7	11
18	7	11
19	8	12
20	8	12
21	8	12
22	8	12
23	9	13
24	9	13

◆◆◆◆◆

## ELEMENTARY PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

*Edited by*  
A. P. HILLMAN

*Assistant Editors*  
GLORIA C. PADILLA and CHARLES R. WALL

Please send all communications regarding ELEMENTARY PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS to DR. A. P. HILLMAN; 709 SOLANO DR., S.E.; ALBUQUERQUE, NM 87108. Each solution or problem should be on a separate sheet (or sheets). Preference will be given to those typed with double spacing in the format used below. Solutions should be received within four months of the publication date.

### DEFINITIONS

The Fibonacci numbers  $F_n$  and the Lucas numbers  $L_n$  satisfy

and 
$$F_{n+2} = F_{n+1} + F_n, F_0 = 0, F_1 = 1$$

$$L_{n+2} = L_{n+1} + L_n, L_0 = 2, L_1 = 1.$$

### PROBLEMS PROPOSED IN THIS ISSUE

B-574 Proposed by Valentina Bakinova, Rondout Valley, NY

Let  $a_1, a_2, \dots$  be defined by  $a_1 = 1$  and  $a_{n+1} = [\sqrt{s_n}]$ , where  $s_n = a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n$  and  $[x]$  is the integer with  $x - 1 < [x] \leq x$ . Find  $a_{100}, s_{100}, a_{1000}$ , and  $s_{1000}$ .

B-575 Proposed by L. A. G. Dresel, Reading, England

Let  $R_n$  and  $S_n$  be sequences defined by given values  $R_0, R_1, S_0, S_1$  and the recurrence relations  $R_{n+1} = rR_n + tR_{n-1}$  and  $S_{n+1} = sS_n + tS_{n-1}$ , where  $r, s, t$  are constants and  $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$ . Show that

$$(r + s) \sum_{k=1}^n R_k S_k t^{n-k} = (R_{n+1} S_n + R_n S_{n+1}) - t^n (R_1 S_0 + R_0 S_1).$$

B-576 Proposed by Herta T. Freitag, Roanoke, VA

Let  $A = L_{2m+3(4n+1)} + (-1)^m$ . Show that  $A$  is a product of three Fibonacci numbers for all positive integers  $m$  and  $n$ .

B-577 Proposed by Herta T. Freitag, Roanoke, VA

Let  $A$  be as in B-575. Show that  $4A/5$  is a difference of squares of Fibonacci numbers.

## ELEMENTARY PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

B-578 Proposed by Piero Filipponi, Fond. U. Bordoni, Roma, Italy

It is known (Zeckendorf's theorem) that every positive integer  $N$  can be represented as a finite sum of distinct nonconsecutive Fibonacci numbers and that this representation is unique. Let  $\alpha = (1 + \sqrt{5})/2$  and  $[x]$  denote the greatest integer not exceeding  $x$ . Denote by  $f(N)$  the number of  $F$ -addends in the Zeckendorf representation for  $N$ . For positive integers  $n$ , prove that  $f([aF_n]) = 1$  if  $n$  is odd.

B-579 Proposed by Piero Filipponi, Fond. U. Bordoni, Roma, Italy

Using the notation of B-578, prove that  $f([aF_n]) = n/2$  when  $n$  is even.

### SOLUTIONS

#### A Specific Fibonacci-Like Sequence

B-550 Proposed by Charles R. Wall, Trident Technical College, Charleston, SC

Show that the powers of  $-13$  form a Fibonacci-like sequence modulo 181, that is, show that

$$(-13)^{n+1} \equiv (-13)^n + (-13)^{n-1} \pmod{181} \text{ for } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

*Solution by L. A. G. Dresel, University of Reading, England*

We have

$$(-13)^2 = 169 \equiv -13 + 1 \pmod{181},$$

and multiplying by  $(-13)^{n-1}$  we obtain

$$(-13)^{n+1} \equiv (-13)^n + (-13)^{n-1} \pmod{181} \text{ for } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

*Also solved by Paul S. Bruckman, Herta T. Freitag, C. Georgiou, Hans Kappus, L. Kuipers, Bob Prielipp, Helmut Prodinger, Heinz-Jürgen Seiffert, Sahib Singh, Lawrence Somer, J. Suck, Tad White, and the proposer.*

#### A Generalization

B-551 Proposed by Charles R. Wall, Trident Technical College, Charleston, SC

Generalize on Problem B-550.

*Solution by Lawrence Somer, George Washington University, Washington, D.C.*

A generalization would be: Let  $p$  be an odd prime. Let  $a$  and  $b$  be integers. Let  $x$  be a nonzero residue modulo  $p$ . Then

$$x^{n+1} \equiv ax^n + bx^{n-1} \pmod{p} \text{ for } n = 1, 2, 3, \dots,$$

if and only if  $x \equiv (a \pm \sqrt{a^2 + 4b})/2 \pmod{p}$ , where  $\sqrt{a^2 + 4b}$  is the least positive residue  $r$  such that  $r^2 \equiv a^2 + 4b \pmod{p}$  if such a residue exists. This result is proved in [1].

# ELEMENTARY PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

## Reference

1. L. Somer. "The Fibonacci Group and a New Proof that  $F_{p-(5/p)} \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ ." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 10, no. 4 (1972):345-348, 354.

Also solved by Paul S. Bruckman, L. A. G. Dresel, Herta T. Freitag, C. Georghiou, Hans Kappus, L. Kuipers, Bob Prielipp, Helmut Prodinger, Heinz-Jürgen Seiffert, Sahib Singh, J. Suck, Tad White, and the proposer.

## Permutations of 9876543210 Divisible by 11

**B-552** Proposed by Philip L. Mana, Albuquerque, NM

Let  $S$  be the set of integers  $n$  with  $10^9 < n < 10^{10}$  and with each of the digits 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 appearing (exactly once) in  $n$ .

- (a) What is the smallest integer  $n$  in  $S$  with  $11|n$ ?
- (b) What is the probability that  $11|n$  for a randomly chosen  $n$  in  $S$ ?

Solution by L. A. G. Dresel, University of Reading, England

Let us number the digit positions 1 to 10 from left to right, and let  $P_1$  denote the set of odd-numbered positions and  $P_2$  the set of even-numbered positions. For a given  $n \in S$ , let  $Q_i$  be the set of digits occupying  $P_i$ , and let  $q_i$  be the sum of these digits, for  $i = 1, 2$ . Since each of the digits 0 to 9 appears exactly once in  $n$ , we have  $q_1 + q_2 = 45$ . But, for divisibility by 11, we require  $q_1 \equiv q_2 \pmod{11}$ , and therefore we must have  $q_1 = 17$  or  $q_1 = 28$ .

(a) Let us assume that the first three digits of the smallest integer  $n$  in  $S$  which is divisible by 11 are 1, 0, 2, in that order. Then  $Q_1$  contains the digits 1 and 2, and we find that  $q_1 = 28$  is not achievable; furthermore,  $q_1 = 17$  implies that  $Q_1$  contains the digit 3 as well. Hence, the required smallest  $n$  is given by  $n = 1024375869$ .

(b) Let us enumerate all the sets  $V_k$  of five distinct digits with a sum equal to 17. There are exactly 11 such sets, namely:

0 1 2 5 9, 0 1 2 6 8, 0 1 3 4 9, 0 1 3 5 8, 0 1 3 6 7, 0 1 4 5 7,  
0 2 3 4 8, 0 2 3 5 7, 0 2 4 5 6, 1 2 3 4 7, 1 2 3 5 6.

For each of these sets  $V_k$  ( $k = 1, 2, \dots, 11$ ), the remaining digits form a complementary set  $W_k$  with a sum equal to 28. In the case in which  $V_k$  contains the digit 0, there are  $4 \times 4!$  ways of placing the digits of  $V_k$  in  $P_1$ , and  $5!$  ways of placing the digits of  $W_k$  in  $P_2$ , giving in all  $4 \times 4! \times 5!$  different numbers of the form  $(V_k, W_k)$ ; but there are also  $5!$  ways of placing  $W_k$  in  $P_1$ , with  $5!$  ways of placing  $V_k$  in  $P_2$ , giving a further  $5! \times 5!$  numbers of the form  $(V_k, W_k)$ . Therefore, the total number of permutations of a particular pair  $V_k, W_k$  is  $9 \times 4! \times 5!$ , and we obtain the same result if the digit 0 is contained in  $W_k$  instead of  $V_k$ . Now, the total number of integers in  $S$  is given by  $9 \times 9!$ , and of these we have  $11 \times 9 \times 4! \times 5!$  divisible by 11. Hence, the probability that  $11|n$  is  $11 \times 4! \times 5! / (9!)$ , which simplifies to  $11/126$ , and is slightly less than 1 in 11.

Also solved by Paul S. Bruckman, L. Kuipers, J. Suck, Tad White, and the proposer.

# ELEMENTARY PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

## Lucas Summation

**B-553** Proposed by D. L. Muench, St. John Fisher College, Rochester, NY

Find a compact form for  $\sum_{i=0}^{2n} \binom{2n}{i} L_{i+1}^2$ .

*Solution by C. Georghiou, University of Patras, Greece*

We have, for  $n > 0$ , with the help of the Binet formulas,

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=0}^{2n} \binom{2n}{i} L_{i+1}^2 &= \sum_{i=0}^{2n} \binom{2n}{i} [\alpha^{2i+2} + \beta^{2i+2} - 2(-1)^i] \\ &= \alpha^2(1 + \alpha^2)^{2n} + \beta^2(1 + \beta^2)^{2n} \\ &= \alpha^2(\alpha 5^{1/2})^{2n} + \beta^2(\beta 5^{1/2})^{2n} \\ &= 5^n L_{2n+2}. \end{aligned}$$

Also solved by Paul S. Bruckman, L. A. G. Dresel, Piero Filipponi, Herta T. Freitag, Hans Kappus, L. Kuipers, Graham Lord, Bob Prielipp, Helmut Prodinger, Heinz-Jürgen Seiffert, Sahib Singh, J. Suck, Tad White, and the proposer.

## Sum of Two Squares

**B-554** Proposed by L. Cseh and I. Merenyi, Cluj, Romania

For all  $n$  in  $\mathbb{Z}^+ = \{1, 2, \dots\}$ , prove that there exist  $x$  and  $y$  in  $\mathbb{Z}^+$  such that

$$(F_{4n-1} + 1)(F_{4n+1} + 1) = x^2 + y^2.$$

*Solution by Graham Lord, Princeton, NJ*

Using the Binet formulas, we have

$$\begin{aligned} (F_{4n-1} + 1)(F_{4n+1} + 1) &= (\alpha^{4n-1} - b^{4n-1} + \sqrt{5})(\alpha^{4n+1} - b^{4n+1} + \sqrt{5})/5 \\ &= \{\alpha^{8n} - 2(ab)^{4n} + b^{8n} + 2 - (\alpha^2 + b^2)(ab)^{4n-1} \\ &\quad - \sqrt{5}[(1 + \alpha^2)\alpha^{4n-1} - (1 + b^2)b^{4n-1}] + 5\}/5 \\ &= (\alpha^{4n} - b^{4n})^2/5 \\ &\quad + \{2 + 3 + 5 + \sqrt{5}[\alpha^{4n}(a - b) + b^{4n}(a - b)]\}/5 \\ &= F_{4n}^2 + L_{2n}^2. \end{aligned}$$

Also solved by Paul S. Bruckman, L. A. G. Dresel, Piero Filipponi, L. Kuipers, Bob Prielipp, Heinz-Jürgen Seiffert, Sahib Singh, J. Suck, Tad White, C. S. Yang & J. F. Wang, and the proposers.

# ELEMENTARY PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

## Sum of Three Squares

B-555 Proposed by L. Cseh and I. Merenyi, Cluj, Romania

For all  $n$  in  $\mathbb{Z}^+$ , prove that there exist  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  in  $\mathbb{Z}^+$  such that

$$(F_{2n-1} + 4)(F_{2n+5} + 1) = x^2 + y^2 + z^2.$$

*Solution by Bob Prielipp, University of Wisconsin, Oshkosh, WI*

We shall show that:

$$(1) \quad (F_{2n-1} + 4)(F_{2n+5} + 1) = F_{2n+2}^2 + F_{n+3}^2 + (L_{n+3} - F_{n-2})^2 \text{ if } n \text{ is even}$$

and

$$(2) \quad (F_{2n-1} + 4)(F_{2n+5} + 1) = F_{2n+2}^2 + (3F_{n+2})^2 + (F_{n+2} + F_{n+1})^2 \text{ if } n \text{ is odd.}$$

[The results referred to below ( $I_{24}$ ,  $I_{18}$ , etc.) can be found on pages 56 and 59 of *Fibonacci and Lucas Numbers* by Verner E. Hoggatt, Jr., Houghton-Mifflin Company, Boston, 1969.]

We begin by establishing the following preliminary results.

**Lemma:**  $F_{2n-1}F_{2n+5} = F_{2n+2}^2 + 4.$

**Proof:**  $F_{2n-1}F_{2n+5} = F_{(2n+2)-3}F_{(2n+2)+3} = F_{2n+2}^2 + F_3^2$  [by  $I_{19}$ ]  $= F_{2n+2}^2 + 4.$

**Corollary:**  $(F_{2n-1} + 4)(F_{2n+5} + 1) = F_{2n+2}^2 + 4F_{2n+5} + F_{2n-1} + 8.$

(1) It suffices to prove that

$$\begin{aligned} 4F_{4k+5} + F_{4k-1} + 8 &= F_{2k+3}^2 + (L_{2k+3} - F_{2k-2})^2. \\ F_{2k+3}^2 + (L_{2k+3} - F_{2k-2})^2 &= (F_{2k+3}^2 + F_{2k-2}^2) - 2L_{2k+3}F_{2k-2} + L_{2k+3}^2 \\ &= 5F_{4k+1} - 2(F_{4k+1} - 5) + (L_{4k+6} - 2) \\ &\quad \text{[by } I_{19}, I_{24}, \text{ and } I_{18}, \text{ respectively]} \\ &= 3F_{4k+1} + (F_{4k+6} + 2F_{4k+5}) + 8 \\ &= 3F_{4k+1} + (3F_{4k+5} + F_{4k+4}) + 8 \\ &= 4F_{4k+5} + (3F_{4k+1} - F_{4k+3}) + 8 \\ &= 4F_{4k+5} - (F_{4k+3} - 3F_{4k+1}) + 8 \\ &= 4F_{4k+5} - (F_{4k} - F_{4k+1}) + 8 \\ &= 4F_{4k+5} + F_{4k-1} + 8. \end{aligned}$$

(2) It suffices to prove that

$$4F_{4k+3} + F_{4k-3} + 8 = (3F_{2k+1})^2 + (F_{2k+1} + L_{2k})^2.$$

# ELEMENTARY PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

$$\begin{aligned}
 (3F_{2k+1})^2 + (F_{2k+1} + L_{2k})^2 &= 2(5F_{2k+1}^2) + 2F_{2k+1}L_{2k} + L_{2k}^2 \\
 &= 2(L_{4k+2} + 2) + 2(F_{4k+1} + 1) + (L_{4k} + 2) \\
 &\quad [\text{by } I_{17}, I_{21}, \text{ and } I_{15}, \text{ respectively}] \\
 &= 2L_{4k+2} + L_{4k} + 2F_{4k+1} + 8 \\
 &= 2(F_{4k+3} + F_{4k+1}) + (F_{4k} + 2F_{4k-1}) \\
 &\quad + 2F_{4k+1} + 8 \\
 &= 2F_{4k+3} + 4F_{4k+1} + F_{4k} + 2F_{4k-1} + 8 \\
 &= 3F_{4k+3} + 2F_{4k+1} + 2F_{4k-1} + 8 \\
 &= 4F_{4k+3} - (F_{4k+2} - F_{4k+1}) + 2F_{4k-1} + 8 \\
 &= 4F_{4k+3} - (F_{4k} - F_{4k-1}) + F_{4k-1} + 8 \\
 &= 4F_{4k+3} + (F_{4k-1} - F_{4k-2}) + 8 \\
 &= 4F_{4k+3} + F_{4k-3} + 8.
 \end{aligned}$$

Also solved by Paul S. Bruckman, L. A. G. Dresel, Graham Lord, and the proposers.

◆◆◆◆



## ADVANCED PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

Edited by  
RAYMOND E. WHITNEY

Please send all communications concerning ADVANCED PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS to RAYMOND E. WHITNEY, MATHEMATICS DEPARTMENT, LOCK HAVEN UNIVERSITY, LOCK HAVEN, PA 17745. This department especially welcomes problems believed to be new or extending old results. Proposers should submit solutions or other information that will assist the editor. To facilitate their consideration, all solutions should be submitted on separate signed sheets within two months after publication of the problems.

### PROBLEMS PROPOSED IN THIS ISSUE

H-400 Proposed by Arne Fransen, Stockholm, Sweden

For natural numbers  $h, k$ , with  $k$  odd, and an irrational  $\alpha$  in the Lucasian sequence  $V_{kh} = \alpha^{kh} + \alpha^{-kh}$ , define  $y_k \equiv V_{kh}$ . Put

$$y_k = \sum_{r=0}^n c_r^{(2n+1)} y_1^{(2r+1)}, \text{ with } k = 2n + 1.$$

Prove that the coefficients are given by

$$c_r^{(2n+1)} \begin{cases} \equiv 1 & \text{for } r = n, \\ = (-1)^{n-r} (2n+1) \sum_{j=1}^J \frac{1}{2j-1} \binom{n-j}{2(j-1)} \binom{n-1-3(j-1)}{r-(j-1)} & \text{for } 0 \leq r < n, \end{cases}$$

where  $J = \min\left(\left\lceil \frac{n+2}{3} \right\rceil, \left\lceil \frac{n+1-r}{2} \right\rceil, r+1\right)$ .

Also, is there a simpler expression for  $c_r^{(2n+1)}$ ?

H-401 Proposed by Albert A. Mullin, Huntsville, AL

It is well known that if  $n \neq 4$  and the Fibonacci number  $F_n$  is prime then  $n$  is prime.

(1) Prove or disprove the complementary result: If  $n \neq 8$  and the Fibonacci number  $F_n$  is the product of two *distinct* primes then  $n$  is either prime or the product of two primes, in which case at least one prime factor of  $F_n$  is Fibonacci.

(2) Define the recursions  $u_{n+1} = F_{u_n}$ ,  $u_1 = F_m$ ,  $m \geq 6$ . Prove or disprove that each sequence  $\{u_n\}$  represents only finitely many primes and finitely many products of two distinct primes.

H-402 Proposed by Piero Filipponi, Rome, Italy

A MATRIX GAME (from the Italian TV serial *Pentathlon*)

## ADVANCED PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

Each element of a square matrix  $M$  of order 3 is entered with a symbol chosen randomly (with probability  $1/2$ ) between two possible symbols (namely  $x$  and  $y$ ). If  $M$  contains at least a row (or a column) entirely formed by  $x$ 's or by  $y$ 's, then one wins the game.

Generalize to a matrix of order  $n$  and find the win probability.

Remark: By inspection, it is easily seen that

$$P_1 = 1, P_2 = 7/8, \text{ and } P_3 = 205/256.$$

A computer experiment gave the following results:

$$\begin{array}{ll} P_3 \doteq .801 & P_7 \doteq .200 \\ P_4 \doteq .637 & P_8 \doteq .111 \\ P_5 \doteq .483 & P_9 \doteq .066 \\ P_6 \doteq .325 & P_{10} \doteq .035 \end{array}$$

The conjecture  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P_n = 0$  immediately follows.

### SOLUTIONS

Late Acknowledgment: C. Georghiou solved H-371.

#### Somewhat Dependable

H-377 Proposed by Lawrence Somer, Washington, D.C.  
(Vol. 22, no. 4, November 1984)

Let  $\{w_n\}_{n=0}^{\infty}$  be a  $k^{\text{th}}$ -order linear integral recurrence satisfying the recursion relation

$$w_{n+k} = a_1 w_{n+k-1} + a_2 w_{n+k-2} + \cdots + a_k w_n.$$

Let  $t$  be a fixed positive integer and  $d$  a fixed nonnegative integer. Show that the sequence  $\{s_n\} = \{w_{tn+d}\}_{n=0}^{\infty}$  also satisfies a  $k^{\text{th}}$ -order linear integral recursion relation

$$s_{n+k} = a_1^{(t)} s_{n+k-1} + a_2^{(t)} s_{n+k-2} + \cdots + a_k^{(t)} s_n.$$

Show further that the coefficients  $a_1^{(t)}, a_2^{(t)}, \dots, a_k^{(t)}$  depend on  $t$  but not on  $d$ , and that  $a_k^{(t)}$  can be chosen so that

$$a_k^{(t)} = (-1)^{(k+1)(t+1)} a_k^t.$$

*Solution by the proposer*

Let

$$f(x) = x^k - a_1 x^{k-1} - a_2 x^{k-2} - \cdots - a_{k-1} x - a_k \tag{1}$$

be the characteristic polynomial corresponding to the recurrence  $\{w_n\}$  with characteristic roots  $r_1, r_2, \dots, r_k$ . By a classical result in the theory of finite differences,

$$w_n = \sum_{i=1}^k (c_i^{(0)} + c_i^{(1)}n + \dots + c_i^{(m_i-1)}n^{(m_i-1)})r_i^n, \quad (2)$$

where the  $c_i^{(j)}$  are complex constants. By (2),

$$\begin{aligned} s_n = w_{nt+d} &= \sum_{i=1}^k (c_i^{(0)} + c_i^{(1)}n + \dots + c_i^{(m_i-1)}n^{(m_i-1)})r_i^{nt+d} \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^k (c_i^{(0)}r_i^d + c_i^{(1)}r_i^d n + \dots + c_i^{(m_i-1)}r_i^d n^{(m_i-1)}) (r_i^t)^n. \end{aligned} \quad (3)$$

Since the roots  $r_i$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq k$ , satisfy a monic polynomial over the integers, it follows that all the algebraic conjugates of a fixed characteristic root  $r_j$  appear among the  $r_i$ 's. It then follows that all the algebraic conjugates of  $r_j^t$  appear among the  $t^{\text{th}}$  powers of the characteristic roots. Thus,  $r_1^t, r_2^t, \dots, r_k^t$  are the roots of a  $k^{\text{th}}$ -order integral monic polynomial

$$g(x) = x^k - \alpha_1^{(t)}x^{k-1} - \dots - \alpha_{k-1}^{(t)}x - \alpha_k^{(t)}. \quad (4)$$

It is evident that the root  $r_i^t$  of  $g(x)$  appears with a multiplicity of at least  $m_i$  and that  $r_i^t$  satisfies the  $k^{\text{th}}$ -order linear integral recurrence

$$h_{n+k} = \alpha_1^{(t)}h_{n+k-1} + \alpha_2^{(t)}h_{n+k-2} + \dots + \alpha_k^{(t)}h_n \quad (5)$$

for  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . It is known and easily verified that if  $P_i^{(m_i-1)}$  is a complex polynomial of degree at most  $m_i - 1$ , then the sequence  $\{c_n\}$  defined by

$$c_n = \sum_{i=1}^k P_i^{(m_i-1)}(n)r_i^t$$

also satisfies the recursion relation given by (5). It thus follows from (3) that  $\{s_n\} = \{w_{nt+d}\}$  also satisfies the same recursion relation.

It follows from (4) that, for  $1 \leq j \leq k$ ,

$$-\alpha_j^{(t)} = \sum (-1)^j r_{i_1}^t r_{i_2}^t \dots r_{i_j}^t, \quad (6)$$

where one sums over all indices  $i_1, i_2, \dots, i_j$  such that

$$1 \leq i_1 < i_2 < \dots < i_j \leq k.$$

Thus, the coefficients  $\alpha_i^{(t)}$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq k$ , clearly depend on  $t$  but not on  $d$ .

Finally, it follows from (1) that

$$-\alpha_k = (-1)^k r_1 r_2 \dots r_k. \quad (7)$$

Thus, from (6) and (7), we see that

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_k^{(t)} &= (-1)^{k+1} r_1^t r_2^t \dots r_k^t = (-1)^{k+1} (r_1 r_2 \dots r_k)^t \\ &= (-1)^{k+1} [(-1)^{k+1} \alpha_k]^t = (-1)^{(k+1)(t+1)} \alpha_k^t. \end{aligned}$$

We are now done.

Also solved by P. Bruckman, L. Dresel, and S. Papastavridis.

# ADVANCED PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

## A Prime Result

H-378 Proposed by M. Wachtel, Zurich, Switzerland  
(Vol. 22, no. 4, November 1984)

For every positive integer  $x$  and  $y$ , provided they are prime to each other, show that no integral divisor of  $x^2 - 5y^2$  is congruent to 3 or 7, modulo 10.

Solution by J. M. Metzger, Grand Forks, ND

Let  $p$  be a prime divisor of  $x^2 - 5y^2$ . Now  $p$  is not a divisor of  $y$  for if so it divides  $x$  as well, contrary to the assumption that  $x$  and  $y$  are prime to each other. Since  $p$  does not divide  $y$ ,  $y$  has a multiplicative inverse, say  $z$ , modulo  $p$ . So, from  $x^2 - 5y^2 \equiv 0 \pmod{p}$ , it follows that  $(xz)^2 \equiv 5 \pmod{p}$ . Thus, 5 is a quadratic residue modulo  $p$ . Hence  $p = 2, 5$  or  $p \equiv \pm 1 \pmod{10}$ . Products of such primes can never be 3 or 7 modulo 10, and so  $x^2 - 5y^2$  cannot have divisors congruent to 3 or 7 modulo 10.

Also solved by P. Bruckman, L. Dresel, L. Kuipers, L. Somer, T. White, and the proposer.

## Sum Formula!

H-379 Proposed by Andreas N. Philippou and Frosso S. Makri,  
University of Patras, Patras, Greece  
(Vol. 22, no. 4, November 1984)

For each fixed integer  $k \geq 2$ , let  $\{f_n^{(k)}\}_{n=0}^{\infty}$  be the Fibonacci sequence of order  $k$  [1]. Show that

$$f_{n+2}^{(k)} = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \sum_{j=0}^n (-1)^i \binom{n-ik}{n-j} \binom{n-j+1}{i}, \quad n \geq 0.$$

## Reference

1. A. N. Philippou & A. A. Muwafi. "Waiting for the  $k^{\text{th}}$  Consecutive Success and the Fibonacci Sequence of Order  $k$ ." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 20, no. 1 (1982):28-32.

Solution by the proposers

The problem is trivially true for  $n = 0$ . It suffices therefore to show it for  $n \geq 1$ . Denote by  $S_n$  and  $L_n$ , respectively, the number of successes and the length of the longest success run in  $n$  ( $\geq 1$ ) Bernoulli trials. It has been shown in [1] and [3] that

$$P[L_n \leq k-1 | S_n = j] = \binom{n}{j}^{-1} \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} (-1)^i \binom{n-ik}{n-j} \binom{n-j+1}{i} \quad (1)$$

and

$$P[L_n \leq k-1 | S_n = j] = \binom{n}{j}^{-1} \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \sum_{n_1, \dots, n_k} \binom{n_1 + \dots + n_k}{n_1, \dots, n_k}, \quad (2)$$

where the inner sum is taken over all nonnegative integers  $n_1, \dots, n_k$  such that  $n_1 + 2n_2 + \dots + kn_k = n-i$  and  $n_1 + \dots + n_k = n-j$ . Relations (1) and (2) give

# ADVANCED PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

$$\sum_{j=0}^n \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \sum_{\substack{n_1, \dots, n_k \\ n_1 + 2n_2 + \dots + kn_k = n-i \\ n_1 + \dots + n_k = n-j}} \binom{n_1 + \dots + n_k}{n_1, \dots, n_k} = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \sum_{j=0}^n (-1)^i \binom{n-ik}{n-j} \binom{n-j+1}{i}. \quad (3)$$

Now let  $p = 1/2$ . Then,

$$\begin{aligned} P[L_n \leq k-1] &= \frac{1}{2^n} \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \sum_{\substack{n_1, \dots, n_k \\ n_1 + 2n_2 + \dots + kn_k = n-i}} \binom{n_1 + \dots + n_k}{n_1, \dots, n_k}, \quad \text{by [2],} \\ &= \frac{1}{2^n} \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} f_{n-i+1}^{(k)} = f_{n+2}^{(k)} / 2^n, \quad \text{by [4].} \end{aligned} \quad (4)$$

Moreover,

$$\begin{aligned} P[L_n \leq k-1] &= \sum_{j=0}^n P[L_n \leq k-1, S_n = j] = \sum_{j=0}^n P[L_n \leq k-1 | S_n = j] P[S_n = j] \\ &= \frac{1}{2^n} \sum_{j=0}^n \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} \sum_{\substack{n_1, \dots, n_k \\ n_1 + 2n_2 + \dots + kn_k = n-i \\ n_1 + \dots + n_k = n-j}} \binom{n_1 + \dots + n_k}{n_1, \dots, n_k}, \quad \text{by (2).} \end{aligned} \quad (5)$$

The last three relations give

$$f_{n+2}^{(k)} = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \sum_{j=0}^n (-1)^i \binom{n-ik}{n-j} \binom{n-j+1}{i}, \quad n \geq 1,$$

which completes the proof of the problem.

## References

1. E. J. Burr & G. Cane. "Longest Run of Consecutive Observations Having a Special Attribute." *Biometrika* 48 (1961):461-465.
2. A. N. Philippou & F. S. Makri. "Longest Success Runs and Fibonacci-Type Polynomials." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 23, no. 4 (1985):338-346.
3. A. M. Philippou & F. S. Makri. "Successes, Runs and Longest Runs." Submitted for publication.
4. A. N. Philippou & A. A. Muwafi. "Waiting for the  $k^{\text{th}}$  Consecutive Success and the Fibonacci Sequence of Order  $K$ ." *The Fibonacci Quarterly* 20, no. 1 (1982):28-32.

Also solved by P. Bruckman, C. Georgiou, and S. Papastavridis.

## A Sparse Sequence

**H-380** Proposed by Charles R. Wall, Trident Technical College, Charleston, SC (Vol. 22, no. 4, November 1984)

The sequence 1, 4, 5, 9, 13, 14, 16, 25, 29, 30, 36, 41, 49, 50, 54, 55, ... of squares and sums of consecutive squares appeared in Problem B-495. Show that this sequence has Schnirelmann density zero.

*Solution by Paul S. Bruckman, Fair Oaks, CA*

Let  $S$  denote the given sequence. We may characterize  $S$  as the sequence of sums of the form

# ADVANCED PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

$$q(i, j) = \sum_{k=i}^{i+j-1} k^2, \quad i, j \geq 1. \quad (1)$$

Given  $n$ , let  $P(n)$  denote the number of pairs  $(i, j)$  such that  $q(i, j) \leq n$ . Then  $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} P(n)/n$  is the Schnirelmann density of  $S$ , which we seek to prove is zero.

Now  $q(i, j) = q(1, i+j-1) - q(1, i-1)$ ; after some simplification, we find

$$q(i, j) = ji(i+j-1) + q(1, j-1). \quad (2)$$

Assuming  $j$  fixed for the time being, we see from (2) that  $q(i, j) \leq n$  implies  $ji^2 \leq n$ , or  $i \leq (n/j)^{1/2}$ ; also,

$$j^3/3 < \frac{1}{6} j(j+1)(2j+1) = q(1, j) \leq q(i, j) \leq n,$$

so  $j^3/3 < n$ , or  $j < (3n)^{1/3}$ . Therefore,

$$P(n) \leq \sum_{j=1}^m (n/j)^{1/2}, \quad \text{where } m = [(3n)^{1/3}]. \quad (3)$$

Now consider the sum

$$Z(N) = \sum_{k=1}^N k^{-1/2}, \quad \text{where } N \text{ is large.} \quad (4)$$

We see that

$$Z(N) = N^{1/2} \sum_{k=1}^N (k/N)^{-1/2} N^{-1} \sim N^{1/2} \int_0^1 x^{-1/2} dx \text{ as } N \rightarrow \infty.$$

Since

$$\int_0^1 x^{-1/2} dx = 2x^{1/2} \Big|_0^1 = 2,$$

thus

$$Z(N) = O(N^{1/2}) \text{ as } N \rightarrow \infty. \quad (5)$$

Returning to (3), we see that  $P(n) \leq Q(n)$ , where  $Q(n) = O(n^{1/2} \cdot m^{1/2}) = O(n^{2/3})$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ ; hence

$$P(n) = O(n^{2/3}) \text{ as } n \rightarrow \infty.$$

Thus,  $P(n)/n = O(n^{-1/3}) = O(n)$  as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ . Q.E.D.

Also solved by C. Georghiou and the proposer.

SEND IN THOSE PROBLEM PROPOSALS NOW!

◆◆◆◆◆

## SUSTAINING MEMBERS

*A.L. Alder	T.H. Engel	L. Miller
S. Ando	J.L. Ercolano	M.G. Monzingo
*J. Arkin	D.R. Farmer	S.D. Moore, Jr.
L. Bankoff	P. Flanagan	K. Nagasaka
F. Bell	F.F. Frey, Jr.	F.G. Ossiander
M. Berg	C.L. Gardner	A. Prince
J.G. Bergart	AA. Gioia	E.D. Robinson
G. Bergum	R.M. Giuli	S.E. Schloth
G. Berzsenyi	I.J. Good	J.A. Schumaker
*M. Bicknell-Johnson	*H.W. Gould	J. Sjoberg
C. Bridger	H.E. Heatherly	L. Somer
*Br. A. Brousseau	A.P. Hillman	M.N.S. Swamy
P.S. Bruckman	*A.F. Horadam	*D. Thoro
M.F. Bryn	F.T. Howard	R. Vogel
P.F. Byrd	R.J. Howell	M. Waddill
G.D. Chakerian	R.P. Kelisky	*L.A. Walker
J.W. Creely	C.H. Kimberling	J.E. Walton
M.J. DeLeon	J.C. Lagarias	G. Weekly
J. Desmond	J. Lahr	R.E. Whitney
H. Diehl	*J. Maxwell	B.E. Williams

\*Charter Members

## INSTITUTIONAL MEMBERS

THE BAKER STORE EQUIPMENT  
COMPANY  
*Cleveland, Ohio*

BOSTON COLLEGE  
*Chestnut Hill, Massachusetts*

BUCKNELL UNIVERSITY  
*Lewisburg, Pennsylvania*

CALIFORNIA STATE UNIVERSITY,  
SACRAMENTO  
*Sacramento, California*

FERNUNIVERSITAET HAGEN  
*Hagen, West Germany*

GENERAL BOOK BINDING COMPANY  
*Chesterland, Ohio*

NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY  
GRAND CENTRAL STATION  
*New York, New York*

PRINCETON UNIVERSITY  
*Princeton, New Jersey*

SAN JOSE STATE UNIVERSITY  
*San Jose, California*

SANTA CLARA UNIVERSITY  
*Santa Clara, California*

SCIENTIFIC ENGINEERING  
INSTRUMENTS, INC.  
*Sparks, Nevada*

TRI STATE UNIVERSITY  
*Angola, Indiana*

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA,  
SANTA CRUZ  
*Santa Cruz, California*

UNIVERSITY OF GEORGIA  
*Athens, Georgia*

WASHINGTON STATE UNIVERSITY  
*Pullman, Washington*

JOVE STATISTICAL TYPING SERVICE  
2088 Orestes Way  
Campbell, California 95008

## BOOKS AVAILABLE THROUGH THE FIBONACCI ASSOCIATION

*Introduction to Fibonacci Discovery* by Brother Alfred Brousseau. Fibonacci Association (FA), 1965.

*Fibonacci and Lucas Numbers* by Verner E. Hoggatt, Jr. FA, 1972.

*A Primer for the Fibonacci Numbers*. Edited by Marjorie Bicknell and Verner E. Hoggatt, Jr. FA, 1972.

*Fibonacci's Problem Book*. Edited by Marjorie Bicknell and Verner E. Hoggatt, Jr. FA, 1974.

*The Theory of Simply Periodic Numerical Functions* by Edouard Lucas. Translated from the French by Sidney Kravitz. Edited by Douglas Lind. FA, 1969.

*Linear Recursion and Fibonacci Sequences* by Brother Alfred Brousseau. FA, 1971.

*Fibonacci and Related Number Theoretic Tables*. Edited by Brother Alfred Brousseau. FA, 1972.

*Number Theory Tables*. Edited by Brother Alfred Brousseau. FA, 1973.

*Recurring Sequences* by Dov Jarden. Third and enlarged edition. Riveon Lematematika, Israel, 1973.

*Tables of Fibonacci Entry Points, Part One*. Edited and annotated by Brother Alfred Brousseau. FA, 1965.

*Tables of Fibonacci Entry Points, Part Two*. Edited and annotated by Brother Alfred Brousseau. FA, 1965.

*A Collection of Manuscripts Related to the Fibonacci Sequence—18th Anniversary Volume*. Edited by Verner E. Hoggatt, Jr. and Marjorie Bicknell-Johnson. FA, 1980.

*Fibonacci Numbers and Their Applications*. Edited by A.N. Philippou, G.E. Bergum and A.F. Horadam.

**Please write to the Fibonacci Association, Santa Clara University, Santa Clara, CA 95033, U.S.A., for current prices.**